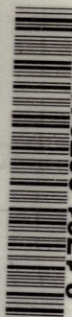


THE PROGRESSIVE  
EUCLID

BOOKS I-II

A. T. RICHARDSON



3 1761 06704263 0



Malu 40



latG  
521p

THE  
"PROGRESSIVE"  
EUCLID

BOOKS I. AND II.

*WITH NOTES, EXERCISES, AND DEDUCTIONS*

EDITED BY

A. T. RICHARDSON, M.A.

SENIOR MATHEMATICAL MASTER AT THE ISLE OF WIGHT COLLEGE  
FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF HERTFORD COLLEGE, OXFORD

London  
MACMILLAN AND CO.  
AND NEW YORK

1891





13924  
151719

6



## PREFACE.

THE present edition of Euclid is written in the interests of beginners, and especially of the dull boys to whom Euclid is often one of the most distasteful subjects of the School Curriculum.

As many difficulties arise from boys having to reason about things of which they have no very clear conception, a series of questions has been given, some 230 in number, before the Propositions begin, arranged in groups to correspond with the pages containing the Definitions, etc. They will be found very simple, for their aim is to encourage boys to think, and not to puzzle them. Similar questions, to serve as tests to see whether the reasoning is understood, are given after each Proposition; these, and the notes, being intended to supplement and test oral teaching.

An attempt has been made to simplify the language as far as possible, while keeping to the original order and arrangement; and by using simpler words in the earlier propositions, to familiarize gradually with Euclidean language. In particular, the word "Hypothesis" has been restricted to mean an *incorrect supposition*. As a supposition is generally something distinct from a fact, it gives an air of unreality to a Proposition, to call the part "given" a Hypothesis, and especially when the same word is used, later on, to denote an impossible supposition. It is easier for boys afterwards to class the two ideas together in one word, than, as beginners, to differentiate

between two very diverse meanings of the same word. Symbols are introduced gradually, that learners may devote all their thought to the reasoning in the early Propositions, without the distraction of having to decipher hieroglyphics. In the later Propositions they are used freely; for, when a boy has become accustomed to them, the eye takes in the argument more rapidly, and more completely. And, since the written word is itself only a *symbol* for the spoken word, it is difficult to see what is the objection to making use of a clearer and shorter symbol. No purely Algebraic symbols are used.

The proof is arranged so as to teach boys to write out neatly and quickly, and in a good form for an Examiner; and it is broken up into sections, that a boy may take in one piece at a time. The figures are placed between the two parts of the Particular Enunciation, so that a clear break may be made between what is given, and what is to be proved. The whole of each Proposition, except in two cases, is in view at the same time.

Constructions are shown by dotted lines, and the more important lines of the figure are thickened. In some cases, letters other than the usual ones are used, to accustom the beginners to the use of them; and use has been made of this to connect more closely Prop. IV. with its first application in Prop. V. The applications of Props. IV. and VIII. are so arranged, that boys may learn to write down first the 3 elements of one triangle, and then the 3 elements of the other; but at the same time make the two sides of the equality correspond.

The Corollary to Prop. XI. is omitted. The Theorem which it seeks to prove is, at least, as axiomatic as Ax. 10; but, more than that, it has been tacitly assumed previously, in Def. 10, Ax. 11, Post. 2, Props. V. and VII., and in the Construction of the Corollary itself!

In Book II. beginners are often bewildered with the “backwards and forwards” arrangement of the proof, by the difficulty of remembering how it begins, and by the fact that the chain of reasoning is broken at every step. To avoid these, the proof always begins with one side of the equality to be proved, and Axiom 1 is assumed at every line, without so much of the unnecessary repetition. In this Book, the connexion of the Propositions with the well-known Algebraic formulæ of two dimensions is pointed out ; for Algebra, with its concise forms, gives at a glance a far clearer idea of the meaning of the Proposition as a whole, than the necessarily verbose Geometrical method.

The edition followed has been Todhunter’s, and to his notes I owe much, including the alternative proofs of Props. 5, 8, 29 of Book I. Alternative proofs are also given for Props. 13, 24, 26 and 32, Cor. I. of Book I., and Props. 4—10 of Book II. All these are given *in full*.

A collection of “Riders” collected from various sources is given at the end of the volume, divided into 3 parts, according to their difficulty.

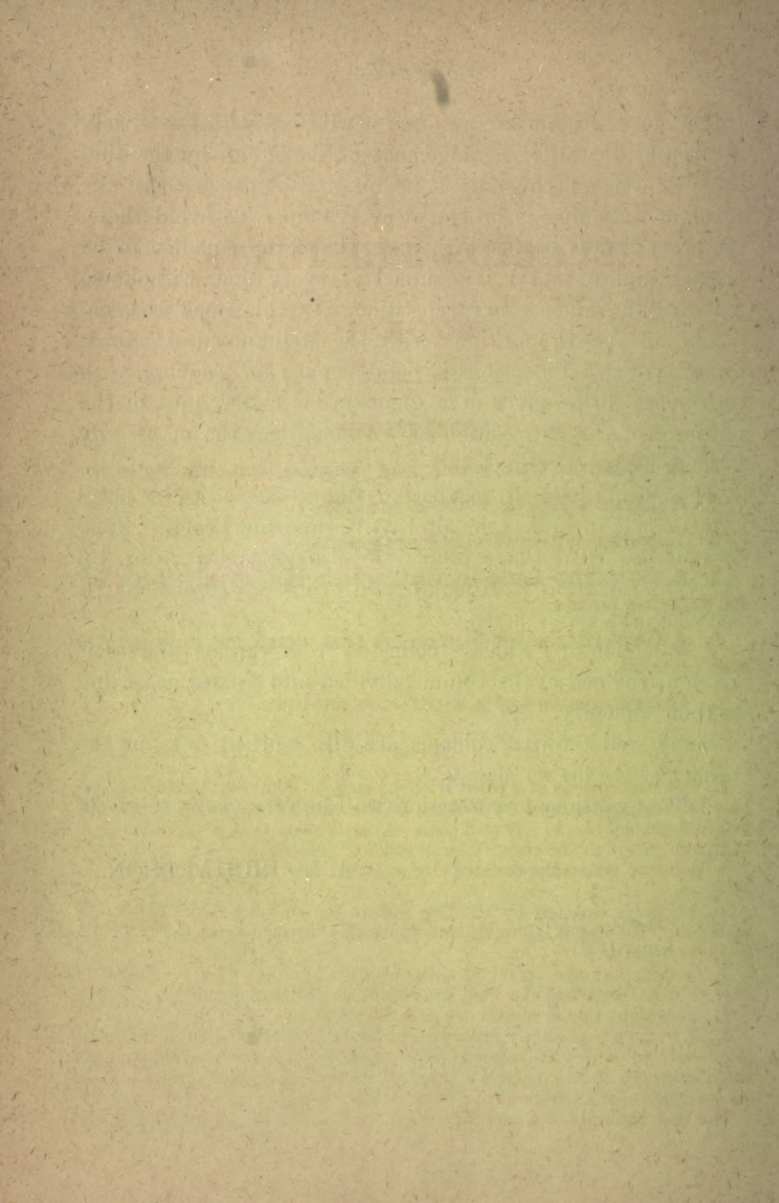
Some well-known Problems are also worked out, for the benefit of the higher classes.

Any suggestions or corrections will be very gladly received.

A. T. RICHARDSON.

I. W. COLL., RYDE,  
*Jan'y.* 1891.





# EUCLID'S ELEMENTS.

## BOOK I.

### DEFINITIONS.

1. A **Point** is that which has position, but has no size.
2. A **Line** is length without breadth.
3. The extremities of a line are points.
4. A **Straight Line** is that which lies evenly between its extreme points.
5. A **Superficies** (or **Surface**) is that which has only length and breadth.
6. The extremities of a superficies are lines.

### NOTES.

1. The conceptions of a point without size, or a line without breadth, may be best understood by looking at the corners and edges of a well-finished cubical block. It will then be easily seen that no definite size can be ascribed to the corners, or *breadth* to the edges.

A point is generally denoted by a letter, as "the point M."

2. A line is denoted by the two letters which are at its ends; as "the line KL." (In this figure the 'lines' or *edges* have no breadth.)



3. Notice that the 'end' of a line cannot have size. If we cut off ever so small a part of the line, we cannot be yet at the end.

4. A straight line is sometimes called a **right line**.

5. A surface necessarily presupposes the existence of a solid (having *thickness*), to which it belongs. But the *surface* has no thickness, since however thin a slice we take off, it will have *two* surfaces, one on each side; and we should be *below* the surface.

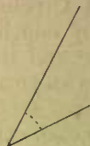
The best example of a superficies is a shadow.

7. A **Plane Superficies** (or Flat Surface) is that in which any two points being taken, the straight line between them lies wholly in that superficies.

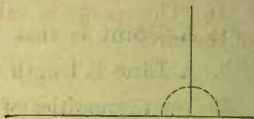
8. A **Plane Angle** is the inclination of two lines to each other in a plane, which meet together, but are not in the same direction.



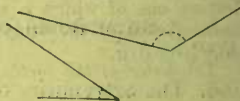
9. A **Plane Rectilineal Angle** is the inclination of two *straight lines* to each other, which meet together, but are not in the same *straight line*.



10. When one straight line standing on another straight line makes the adjacent angles equal to one another, each of these angles is called a **Right Angle**, and each straight line is said to be **Perpendicular** to the other.



11. An **Obtuse Angle** is greater than a right angle.



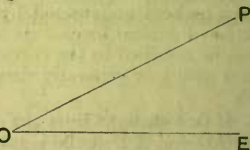
12. An **Acute Angle** is less than a right angle.



#### NOTES.

7. This definition is practically used by a carpenter, when he uses a "straight edge" to try if a piece of wood is quite flat.

9. The idea of an angle is best obtained by imagining two lines  $OE$ ,  $OP$ , hinged at  $O$ , so that  $OP$  can revolve round  $O$ , whilst  $OE$  remains fixed. As  $OP$  revolves, the angle becomes larger or smaller, until  $OP$  comes to be in the same straight line with  $OE$ , when the "angle" (in Euclid's sense) ceases to exist.



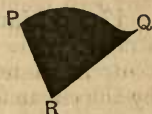
Or, suppose  $EO$  and  $OP$  to represent two *roads*; then the angle is the "turn" which a man has to make when he goes from one along the other. In the figure above he will evidently have to make a very "sharp" turn (or "acute" angle) to the right or left hand.

It is easy to see that the *distance* he has to go along the roads makes no difference to the sharpness, or obtuseness, of the turn; and so the *length* of the straight lines which form the angle makes no difference to the size of the angle.

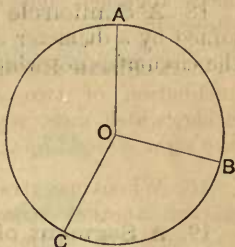


13. A term or boundary is the extremity of anything.

14. A Figure is that which is enclosed by one or more boundaries.



15. A Circle is a plane figure contained by one line called the **Circumference**, and is such that all straight lines drawn from a certain point within the figure, to the circumference, are equal to each other.



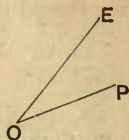
16. This point is called the **Centre** of the circle.

NOTES.

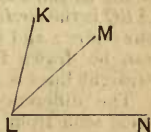
The point, where the two lines which form the angle meet, is called the *vertex*.

An angle is sometimes denoted by the letter at its vertex, as "the angle *O*"; or, more frequently, by *three* letters, one of which is at the vertex, and the others, one on each of the arms of the angle, as "the angle *EOP*."

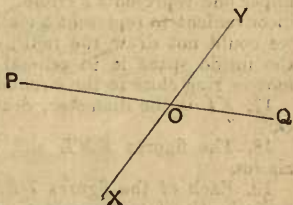
The letter at the vertex must be the middle one of the three.



When one straight line forms an arm of each of two angles, these angles are said to be *adjacent* to each other. Thus the angles *KLM* and *MLN* are adjacent, because the line *LM* belongs to both.



If two straight lines cut one another, as *PQ* and *XY* at the point *O*, then the angles *XOP*, *YOQ*, are said to be *vertically opposite* to each other, and so are *POY* and *XOQ*.

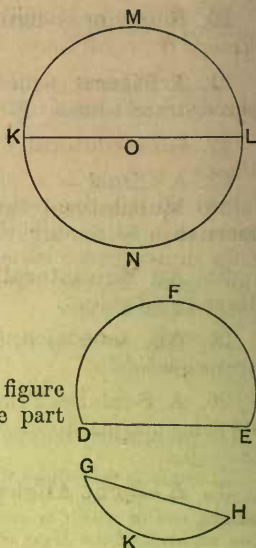


14. The figure *PQR* has for boundaries, or edges, the curved line *PQ*, and the straight lines *PR*, and *RQ*. It should be noticed that no *breadth* can be ascribed to these edges.

17. A **Diameter** of a circle is a straight line drawn through the centre, and terminated at both ends by the circumference.

18. A **Semicircle** is a figure contained by a diameter and the part of the circumference which it cuts off.

19. A **Segment of a Circle** is a figure contained by a straight line, and the part of the circumference which it cuts off.



#### NOTES.

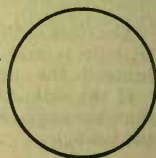
15. In the above figure the *space within* the outside edge of the ring *ABC* is the *circle*; the *outside edge* of the ring is the *circumference*; *O* is the *centre*; and *OA*, *OB*, *OC*, are some of the equal straight lines which can be drawn from the centre to the circumference. Each of these straight lines is called a *radius*.

The difference between a circle and a ring is at once seen from the accompanying figures, where the upper one represents a circle. But it would be very inconvenient to represent a circle in this way, because we could not draw the radii, etc. Consequently all the inside space is in general left clear, except the narrow ring close to the circumference.

17. *KL* is the diameter, drawn through the centre *O*.

18. The figures *KML* and *KNL* are each semicircles.

19. Each of the figures *DEF*, *GHK* is a *segment* of a circle, the former greater, and the latter smaller, than a semicircle. The straight lines, *DE*, *GH*, are called *chords* of the circle. The "parts of the circumferences," *DFE*, *GHK*, are called *arcs*.



20. Rectilinear figures are those which are contained by straight (or right) lines.

21. Trilateral figures, or Triangles, are contained by three straight lines.

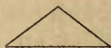
22. Quadrilateral figures are contained by four straight lines.

23. Multilateral figures, or Polygons, are contained by more than four straight lines.

24. An Equilateral Triangle has three equal sides.



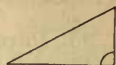
25. An Isosceles Triangle has two equal sides.



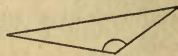
26. A Scalene Triangle has all its sides unequal to each other.



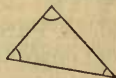
27. A Right-Angled Triangle has a right angle.



28. An Obtuse-Angled Triangle has an obtuse angle.



29. An Acute-Angled Triangle has three acute angles.

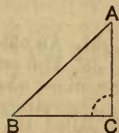


NOTES.

20. Figures contained by curved lines are called *curvilinear*.

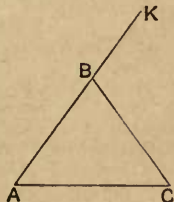
27. In a right-angled triangle the side which is opposite to the right-angle is called the *hypoteneuse*.

(In the figure  $AB$  is the hypoteneuse.)



The side which is opposite to an angle of a triangle is said to subtend that angle; thus,  $BC$  subtends the angle  $A$ .

If the side  $AB$  of a triangle be produced to  $K$ , then the angle  $KBC$  is called an exterior angle of the triangle.

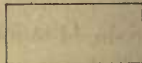




30. A **Square** is a four-sided figure which has all its sides equal, and all its angles right angles.



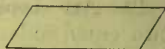
31. An **Oblong** is a four-sided figure which has not all its sides equal, but all its angles are right angles.



32. A **Rhombus** is a four-sided figure which has all its sides equal, but its angles are not right angles.



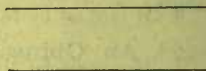
33. A **Rhomboid** is a four-sided figure which has its opposite sides equal, but all its sides are not equal, nor its angles right angles.



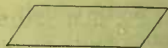
34. All other four-sided figures are called **Trapeziums**.



35. **Parallel straight lines** are such as lie in the same plane, and which being produced ever so far both ways, do not meet.



36. A **Parallelogram** is a four-sided figure whose opposite sides are parallel.



#### NOTES.

31. An oblong is more frequently called a **rectangle**.

36. The term parallelogram will be seen to include the square, oblong, rhombus, and rhomboid.

The straight line joining two opposite angles of a parallelogram is called the **diameter** or **diagonal**.

### POSTULATES.

1. Let it be granted that a straight line may be drawn from any one point to any other point.
2. Let it be granted that a terminated straight line may be produced to any length in that straight line.
3. Let it be granted that a circle may be described with any centre at any distance from that centre.

### NOTE.

These postulates are "Requests" that these three simple problems may be assumed as possible. In other words, they amount to a supposition that the student has a *ruler* and a *pair of compasses*. These, however, are not supposed to be used for measuring.

### AXIOMS.

1. Things which are equal to the same thing are equal to one another.
2. If equals be added to equals the wholes are equal. (Addition.)
3. If equals be taken from equals the remainders are equal. (Subtraction.)
4. If equals be added to unequals the wholes are unequal. (Addition.)
5. If equals be taken from unequals the remainders are unequal. (Subtraction.)
6. Things which are double of the same thing are equal. (Multiplication.)
7. Things which are halves of the same thing are equal. (Division.)
8. Magnitudes which **coincide** with one another—(that is, which can fit exactly on one another)—are equal.
9. The whole is greater than its part.
10. Two straight lines cannot enclose space.
11. All right angles are equal to one another.
12. See Prop. 17.

### NOTE.

Axioms are "*self-evident truths*," which are at once seen to require no proof. Euclid calls them "Common Notions."

## EXERCISES.

## I.

1. Draw a figure which will have five points.
2. How many lines are there to the figure you have drawn?
3. Mention six examples of a "Plane Superficies," and six examples of a "superficies" which is not "plane."
4. Explain what is the meaning of the word "plane."
5. Draw a figure which will show a point without size and a line without breadth.

6. Is this a line?  
your answer.



Give a reason for

FIG. 1.

7. Are the edges of Fig. 2 lines? Are they straight lines?



FIG. 2.

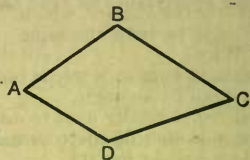


FIG. 3.

8. Mention *exactly* which are the lines of Fig. 3.
9. Is the mark on the paper between *A* and *B* a line? Give your reason.
10. Is the figure *ABCD* a Plane Superficies? Why?

## II.

1. Explain what is meant in Def. 7 by "the straight line lies wholly in the superficies."
2. If the straight line between two points does *not* lie wholly in the superficies, what will it look like? What would you then say about the superficies?
3. Could you take two points on the surface of a polished round ruler, so that the straight line between them lies wholly in the surface? Is the surface a "plane superficies"?
4. How many surfaces has a round ruler? a brick? an india-rubber ball? Are any of these "plane superficies"? Give reasons.
5. How many edges are there in each of the above objects? Are any of the edges "straight lines"? Why?
6. Explain why a superficies has no thickness?
7. Has a line thickness? What has it?
8. Draw a figure to represent a straight line. Is what you have drawn a straight line? Where is the straight line really? How many straight lines are there in what you have drawn?



9. Make two other figures to represent
  - (i.) A straight line about twice as long as the first.
  - (ii.) A straight line about four times as long as the first.
10. Is a piece of paper a "Plane Superficies"?

## III.

1. Draw an "obtuse plane rectilinear angle."
2. Draw three plane angles, which will not be rectilinear.
3. Draw an acute angle.
4. Make one of the lines of the angle you have just drawn longer, and the other one shorter. Is the angle now larger or smaller than it was?
5. Which is the larger of these two angles? *A* or *B*? Why?
6. Must the two lines which make an angle be both the same length? Why?
7. Explain in your own words (not the words of the definition) what you understand by an angle.
8. What is practically used to make a right angle?
9. Draw a sketch of the tool used by a carpenter to make a right angle. How does he use it?
10. Name the angles in these figures below by the letters :—

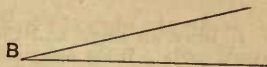


FIG. 4.

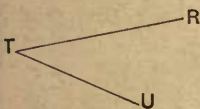


FIG. 5.

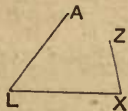


FIG. 6.

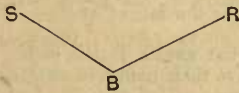


FIG. 7.

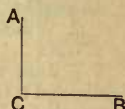


FIG. 8.

## IV.

1. Make a copy of the accompanying figure, and on it mark the following angles by putting a dotted line round the vertex of the angle, similar to that in the figures of Definitions 11 and 12. Number your angles.

1. *AEB*. 2. *BAE*. 3. *ABE*. 4. *ABC*.
5. *ECB*. 6. *ACB*. 7. *ADB*. 8. *ADE*.

2. How is an angle made larger? How could you show this practically with a pocket knife? What "Mathematical Instrument" would also show it?

3. Which is the larger angle :—(i.) *BAC* or *BAD*? (ii.) *DBA* or *CBA*? Give your reason.

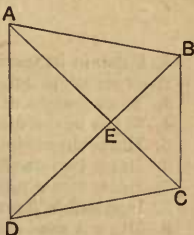


FIG. 9.

4. Draw an acute angle, and then make one twice as large, as nearly as you can.
5. Draw an obtuse angle, and then draw a line to divide it into two angles.
6. Draw a right angle, either with a "set square," or as nearly as you can make it, and divide it into three angles.
7. What is the vertex of (i.) the angle  $AED$ ; (ii.) the angle  $BCA$ ; (iii.) the angle  $DBA$  (in the figure above); (iv.) the angle  $XYZ$ ?
8. Draw a figure to represent the last angle in question 7.
9. Of what kind is the angle you have drawn?
10. Draw two straight lines as nearly perpendicular to one another as you can.

## V.

1. Draw an angle, and then divide it as nearly as you can into two equal parts. What must you draw in order to do this?
2. Draw an obtuse angle and divide it into two parts which are not equal. Say which is the larger of them, and why you think so.
3. In how many ways can an angle be named? Illustrate by giving all the different ways of naming the angle with the dotted line round it in this figure.
4. Of what kind are the angles  $WXZ$ ,  $XVW$ ,  $YZX$ ?
5. What is the symbol used to denote an angle?
6. Which is the larger angle— $VWX$  or  $XWZ$ ?
7. Into what angles is the angle  $YZW$  divided? Give their names in as many ways as can be done.
8. Name all the angles which have the vertex  $W$ .
9. What angle do we get by adding the angles  $VZY$  and  $WZX$ ?
10. If we take the angle  $XWV$  from the angle  $XWZ$  what is left?

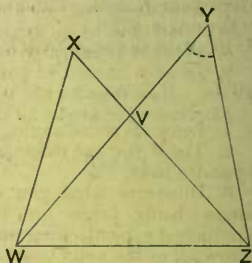


FIG. 10.

## VI.

1. Explain in your own words what is a figure?
2. Is an angle a figure? Give your reason.
3. Is a segment of a circle a figure? Why?
4. What is the difference between a circle, a ring, a circumference?
5. Draw three circles which all have the same centre.
6. Draw two circles with different centres but the same radius.
7. Draw two circles with different centres, but with equal radii.
8. Is an arc a figure? Give reasons.
9. Draw a semi-circle.
10. Is a semi-circle a segment of a circle? Is a segment of a circle a semi-circle?

## VII.

1. Explain why the length of the arms of an angle makes no difference to the size of the angle.

2. Name the angle which is adjacent to the angle  $RVM$  in this figure.

3. There are eight ways of designating the angle  $RVO$ . Find them.

4. Which is the larger angle— $MQO$  or  $KQR$ ? Why?

5. What is the angle vertically opposite to  $ROV$ ?

6. What other angle in the figure has an angle vertically opposite to it?

7. What is the sum of the angles  $RMO$  and  $VMQ$ ?

8. If we take the angle  $RMV$  from the angle  $KMV$ , what is the remainder?

9. Can the angle  $VOQ$  be called "the angle  $O$ "? Give your reason. Can the angle  $RKM$  be called "the angle  $K$ "?

10. Add the angle  $KMR$  to the angle  $RMO$ .

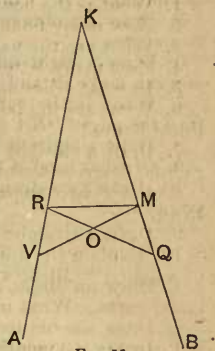


FIG. 11.

## VIII.

1. Draw an acute angle, with an obtuse angle adjacent to it.

2. Try if you can draw an acute angle with an obtuse angle vertically opposite to it.

3. Illustrate what you mean by one angle being larger or smaller than another, by mentioning any roads you know of, in the neighbourhood.

4. Is the angle  $LMQ$  larger or smaller than the angle  $LMZ$ ?

5. Take away the angle  $YLQ$  from the angle  $MLY$ . What is left?

6. What do we get by adding the angle  $LQM$  to the angle  $MQK$ ?

7. Which of the following pairs of angles can be added together?

(i.)  $KLM$  and  $QLM$ .

(ii.)  $LMZ$  and  $LKM$ .

(iii.)  $YLQ$  and  $MLQ$ .

(iv.)  $LQM$  and  $QMK$ .

Give the resulting angles, where they can be added together.

8. Of what kind are the angles  $LKM$ ,  $KMQ$ ,  $MLQ$ ?

9. Is the angle  $YKZ$  larger or smaller than the angle  $LKM$ ? Give a reason for your answer.

10. What angles are adjacent to the angles  $KLM$  and  $LMZ$  respectively?

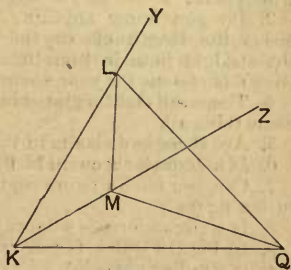


FIG. 12.

## IX.

1. What is the boundary of a circle called ?
2. How many boundaries has a segment of a circle ?
3. What are the names given to them ?
4. How many letters are needed to name an angle ?
5. In what order must they be put ?
6. What are the boundaries of (i.) a line, (ii.) a point, (iii.) a rectilinear figure ?
7. Draw a straight line, and with one end as centre, and the line as radius, describe a circle.
8. Draw two angles vertically opposite to one another, and name them.
9. Draw a straight line standing on another straight line.
10. Explain the difference between "a figure" and "the boundaries of a figure." Illustrate your answer by the case of a field.

## X.

1. In Fig. 13 mention :—

- (i.) The names of the two circles.
- (ii.) The centres of both circles.
- (iii.) All the radii of the left-hand circle.

2. Is there a diameter to either of these circles ? If so, which is it ?

3. Do you know anything about the length of any of the straight lines in Fig. 13 ?  
Give *full* reasons for your answer.

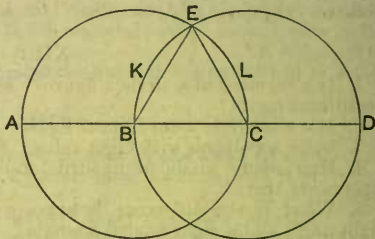


FIG. 13.

4. There are eight segments of circles in the above figure. Try and name them all.
5. Are there any chords in the figure ?
6. Is a diameter a chord ? Is a chord a diameter ?
7. Can you have a figure contained by one straight line ? Is a circle such a figure ?
8. Is a circumference a figure ? Give your reason. If not, what is it ?
9. In Fig. 13 which is the radius which is *common* to both circles ? (i.e., is a radius of both.)
10. How do you know the radius of a circle when you see it ?

## XI.

1. Draw two circles which cut one another.
2. Which two points are on the circumferences of both these circles ? Are there any more such points ?
3. Try if you can draw two circles which will cut one another at more than two points.



4. Draw two circles which cut one another, and then another circle through the points where the first two circles cut?

5. We call these points “(—) to the three circles.” Supply the word which is wanting.

6. Draw two segments of a circle, one greater and one less than a semi-circle.

7. Is Fig. 14, strictly speaking, an arc? Give your reason.

8. Draw a circle, with any radius. With centre on the circumference of this circle, and *the same radius*, describe another circle. With centres at the points where this circle cuts the first circle, and *the same radius*, describe other circles. Continue this all round the first circle.

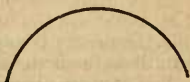


FIG. 14.

9. Draw straight lines all round the inner circle from point to point, where the outer circles cut it. Do you know anything about the length of the sides of the rectilinear figure you have thus made?

10. Draw four circles which shall all pass through the same two points.

## XII.

1. Is a segment of a circle a figure? Is it a plane figure? Is it a plane rectilinear figure?

2. Is a semicircle a curvilinear figure?

3. Draw a polygon with eight sides. How many angles has it?

4. How many kinds of quadrilateral figures are there?

5. What is the difference between a right angle and a right-angled triangle?

6. What are the different sorts of triangles, classed according to their sides?

7. Give the names of all the triangles in Fig. 15.

8. What is the difference between “the angle  $EHF$ ” and “the triangle  $EHF$ ”?

9. What is  $KFG$ ?

10. What is  $DEH$ ?

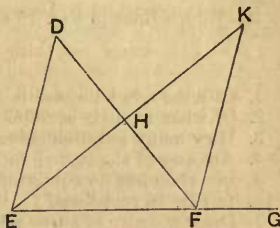


FIG. 15.

## XIII.

Draw the following, as nearly exact as you can:—

1. A scalene right-angled triangle.

2. An isosceles obtuse-angled triangle.

3. An equilateral triangle.

4. An isosceles right-angled triangle.

5. A scalene acute-angled triangle.

6. Can you make a triangle with two obtuse angles? Show by a figure.

7. Try if you can make a right-angled equilateral triangle?
8. Can you make an acute-angled isosceles triangle? Show by a figure.
9. Draw a square, as nearly exact as you can.
10. Draw a rhomboid, as nearly exact as you can.

## XIV.

1. Draw any triangle, and then make another with its sides the same length as the first, as accurately as you can.

2. Draw six different trapeziums.

3. Of what shape are the diamonds in a pack of cards?

4. How many sorts of figures are there in Fig. 16? Name them all.

5. What is the diameter of the figure  $ABCD$ ? What other name may be given to it, besides "diameter"?

6. There are six pairs of vertically opposite angles in the figure. Find them, and write them down in pairs.

7. What are the exterior angles of the triangle  $FKC$ ?

8. Is the figure  $KGCF$  rectangular?

9. Is  $HKF$  an angle or a triangle? Of what kind is it? What is  $\angle EK$ ?

10. Which lines in Fig. 16 appear to be parallel?

## XV.

1. Of what quadrilateral is  $KC$  the diameter?

2. Of what triangle is  $BGK$  the exterior angle? Give your reasons.

3. How many parallelograms are there in Fig. 16?

4. Are any of the figures in Fig. 16 trapeziums?

5. Is a rhombus an equilateral figure? Is a rhomboid? Why?

6. Is Fig. 16 rectilinear?

7. Draw a figure of three sides, which is not rectilinear.

8. How many diagonals has a square?

9. If two straight lines be drawn so that they would never meet, however far they were produced, are they necessarily parallel? Why?

10. Draw a straight line and produce it till it is twice as long as at first.

## XVI.

1. Draw a figure with seven sides. From any point inside the figure draw straight lines to all the angular points. How many triangles does this make? Would the same thing be the case, no matter how many sides the figure had?

2. Draw two parallel straight lines.

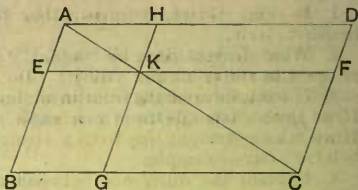


FIG. 16.

3. What is a parallelogram?
4. Is a triangle a parallelogram?
5. What do you mean by the area of a figure?
6. Mention any pairs of parallel lines that you can see round you.
7. If you joined the ends of four equal straight rods together so as to form a quadrilateral figure, of what kind would it be?
8. What do you mean by "coincide"?
9. What is a postulate? an axiom?
10. What is the smallest number of straight lines that can enclose a figure?

## XVII.

1. In Fig. 17 which line is the broadest— $AB$  or  $BC$ ?

2. What do you mean by "equal"? Is the point  $A$  equal to the point  $B$ ? Why?

3. If we take an angle from an angle, what is left? If we take a triangle from a triangle, what is left? If we take a straight line from a straight line, what is left? Give examples.

4. Explain the difference between a circle and a ring.

5. Can you draw two lines to cut in two points?

6. Which is the greater— $BD$  or  $BC$ ? Which axiom tells you this?

7. Draw an angle. Now make each of the lines twice as long. Is the angle twice as large as before? State your reasons.

8. In the triangle  $ADC$  which angle does  $AD$  subtend?

9. What are the names of the angles of the triangle  $ABC$ ? Is  $ADC$  an angle of this triangle?

10. Of what kind is the triangle  $ADC$ ?

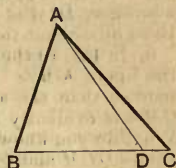


FIG. 17.

## XVIII.

1. In Fig. 18 the lines  $AB$ ,  $AC$ ,  $DE$ ,  $DF$  are all the same size. Are the angles  $BAC$ ,  $EDF$  therefore equal?

2. Which is the largest point in the above figure?

3. Try if you can draw a triangle with two right angles.

4. How many acute angles are there in every triangle?

5. Is  $ABC$  a figure? Why? (Fig. 18.)

6. In Fig. 17 of what triangle is  $ADB$  the exterior angle?

7. What instruments are you supposed to have for Euclid? How are they not to be used?

8. Is a diameter of a circle a figure?

9. In Fig. 17 which is the larger triangle,  $ABC$  or  $ABD$ ? Why?

10. How does Euclid try if two magnitudes are equal?

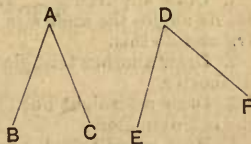


FIG. 18.

## XIX.

1. In Greek the word for an angle means "a knee." Can you explain why an angle should be so called?

2. What is the smallest number of straight hurdles with which a sheep could be penned? What axiom tells you this?

3. If a boy  $A$  is taller than  $B$ , and  $B$  is taller than  $C$ , what can you assert about the relative height of  $A$  and  $C$ ?

4. In Fig 17 if the angle  $ADB$  is greater than the angle  $ACB$ , and the angle  $ABD$  is greater than the angle  $ADB$ , what do you know about the angles  $ABC$  and  $ACB$ ?

5. Two boys  $A$  and  $B$  are the same height.  $A$  has a brother,  $C$ , who is taller than he, and  $B$  has a brother,  $D$ , who is shorter than he. What do you know about the heights of  $C$  and  $D$ ?

6. In Fig. 19 the angle  $KLM$  is the same size as the angle  $KML$ . The angle  $QLM$  is evidently smaller than the angle  $KLM$ ; while the angle  $QML$  is evidently greater than the angle  $KML$ . What do you know about the relative size of the angles  $QLM$  and  $QML$ ?

7. Make an angle  $ABC$ . Now make another angle  $PQR$ , so that  $PQ$  is the same length as  $AB$ , and  $QR$  the same length as  $BC$ . Does this make the angle  $PQR$  equal to the angle  $ABC$ ? Why?

8. What sort of an angle does your knee generally make when sitting on a form of convenient height? Which would make the larger angle, the knee of a tall boy, or a short one?

9. What is the smallest number of surfaces a body can have?

10. How many surfaces has a hemisphere?

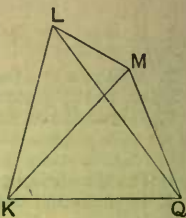


FIG. 19.

## XX.

1. Draw any triangle. It is possible to draw another triangle which has its angles the same size as those of the first, but its sides all longer. Try and do this.

2. Draw another triangle equiangular to the first, but with its sides all shorter.

3. Draw a straight line. Make a quadrilateral of which this straight line is a diameter.

4. How many exterior angles can be drawn to a triangle? Show by a figure.

5. Why is a small angle called "acute"?

6. Is there any connection between a "right" line, and a "right" angle?

7. Which is the *base* of a triangle? Which the *vertex*?

8. If an angle represents the turn which a man has to make when going from one road to another, show how the angle is named by letters.

9. Can two lines enclose space?

10. Draw two triangles which have one side common to both.



## XXI.

1. Draw two triangles which have one angle common to both.
2. What do you mean by "a magnitude"? (as in axiom 8.)
3. Of how many "dimensions" are the following:—a line, a straight line, a brick, a cricket ball, a point, a rectilineal figure, a plane, an angle, a shadow?
4. What is the "perimeter" of a rhomboid, two of whose sides are five inches, and three inches respectively?
5. Show that the outside of one closed surface cannot cut the outside of another closed surface in an odd number of points.
6. What is the meaning of the expression, "Join  $AB$ "?
7. How are triangles classed according to their angles?
8. If, when two points are taken on a superficies, the straight line joining them lies wholly in that superficies, is it a plane superficies?
9. Draw two triangles which can coincide, and make them do so.
10. What is the meaning of the word "radius"?

## XXII.

1. Draw a straight line, and on it describe a triangle.
2. Is an equilateral triangle isosceles?
3. Where is the centre of a semicircle?
4. What is the diameter of a circle whose radius is 1 inch?
5. The angle  $DGF$  is equal to the angle  $DFG$ ; the angle  $EFG$  is greater than  $DFG$ ; and the angle  $EGF$  is less than  $DGF$ ; what do you know about the angles  $EFG$  and  $EGF$ ?
6. In making a circle with a pair of compasses, how do you know that it fulfils the condition of Def. 15.
7. What is a "hypoteneuse"?
8. If two points are given, how many straight lines can be drawn from one to the other? Why?
9. Draw two triangles as nearly equal as you can. Cut them out, and see if they will coincide.
10. Draw two angles as nearly equal as you can.

## XXIII.

1. What is the meaning of "subtend"?
2. Draw a triangle, and produce one of its sides. What new angle have you made, and by what special name is it known?
3. Can you draw two straight lines to cut in two points?
4. Draw two straight lines of equal lengths. Divide each of them into two equal parts. What does Axiom 7 tell you about these?
5. Draw two circles which cut, and then draw their common chord.
6. Draw a rectangle, and divide it into two right-angled triangles.
7. Draw two triangles which have (i.) a common side, (ii.) a common angle.
8. By what is a segment of a circle contained?
9. In what two ways are triangles classified?
10. Is there any connexion between the words "plain" and "plane"?

## TO THE LEARNER.

*Never attempt to learn a proposition of Euclid "by heart."*

First learn *by heart* the General Enunciation, and get a clear idea of what the whole proposition is about. Try and keep this before you, *and never lose sight of it* all through the proposition. Next, read carefully through the whole proposition to get a *general* idea of the contents.

Then go more slowly over each part, and be very careful to *understand* each line before going on to the next. Remember that missing the meaning of one line will often make the whole obscure. When you think that you thoroughly understand it, try and go through the proposition without the book, and with a figure of your own drawing, referring to the book only when you forget a step, and then *begin again* at the Particular Enunciation.

*Never copy the figure from the book; but draw it, bit by bit, as you write down the steps of the construction.* Do not make your figures and letters too small. Use letters different to those in the book. Draw your figure as accurately as possible, always using a ruler and compasses.

## SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

= for "equals," or "is equal to" (should not be used for the adjective "equal").

∴ for therefore.

∠ „ angle.

rt. ∠ „ right angle.

△ „ triangle.

⊙<sup>le</sup> „ circle.

○<sup>ce</sup> „ circumference.

def. for definition.

post. „ postulate.

hyp. „ hypothesis.

st. „ straight.

sq. „ square.

tog<sup>r</sup>. „ together.

cr. „ centre.

∴ for since, because.

∠ABC „ the angle ABC.

⊥<sup>r</sup> to „ { perpendicular to, or,  
at right angles to.

||<sup>l</sup> „ parallel.

□<sup>gram</sup> „ parallelogram.

ax. for axiom.

prop. „ proposition.

const. „ construction.

gr. „ greater.

rect. „ rectangle.

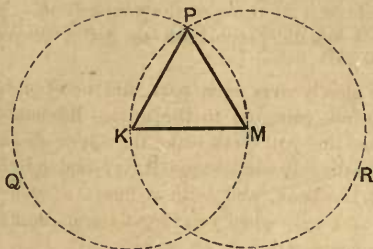
ext<sup>r</sup>. „ exterior.

etc., etc., etc.

## PROPOSITION I. PROBLEM.

GENERAL ENUNCIATION—*To describe an equilateral triangle on a given finite straight line.*

PARTICULAR ENUNCIATION—Let  $KM$  be the given straight line ;  
We have to describe an equilateral triangle on  $KM$ .



CONSTRUCTION—

1. With centre  $K$  and distance  $KM$  describe the circle  $MPQ$ .....Post. 3.
2. With centre  $M$  and distance  $MK$  describe the circle  $KPR$ .....Post. 3.
3. From the point  $P$ , where the circumferences cut, draw the straight lines  $PK$  and  $PM$ .....Post. 1.

Now, we have to prove, that the triangle  $PKM$  is equilateral.

PROOF—

1. Because  $K$  is the centre of the circle  $MPQ$  ;  
Therefore  $KP = KM$ .....Def. 15
2. Because  $M$  is the centre of the circle  $KPR$  ;  
Therefore  $MP = MK$ .....Def. 15.
3. Now, we have shown that  $KP$  and  $MP$  are both equal to  $KM$  ;  
Therefore they are equal to each other.....Ax. 1.

WHEREFORE  $PK$ ,  $KM$ , and  $MP$  are all equal, and the triangle  $PKM$  is equilateral.....Def. 24.

QUOD ERAT FACIENDUM.

(Which was required to be done.)

## PROPOSITION II. PROBLEM.

GENERAL ENUNCIATION—*From a given point to draw a straight line equal to a given straight line.*

PARTICULAR ENUNCIATION—Let  $P$  be the given point and  $XY$  the given straight line ;

We have to draw, from  $P$ , a straight line of the same length as  $XY$ .

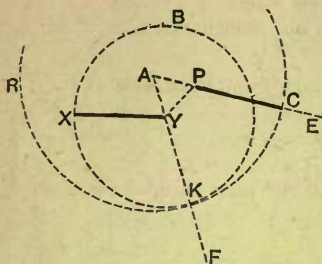


FIG. 1.

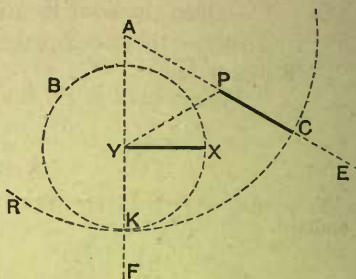


FIG. 2.

## CONSTRUCTION—

1. Join  $P$  to one end of the line  $XY$  (say  $Y$ ).....Post. 1.
2. On this *new* line  $PY$  describe an equilateral triangle  $PAY$ .....I.1.
3. Produce  $AP$ ,  $AY$  (the two new sides) to  $E$  and  $F$ ...Post. 2.
4. With centre  $Y$  (the end which was joined to  $P$ ) and distance  $YX$  (the given line), describe the circle  $XKB$ .....Post. 3.  
Cutting the line  $AF$  (which passes through the centre  $Y$ ) at  $K$ .
5. With centre  $A$  and distance  $AK$  (to the new point) describe the circle  $RKC$ .....Post. 3.  
Cutting the straight line  $AE$  (the other produced line) in  $C$ .

Now we have to prove that  $PC$  is equal to  $XY$ .



PROOF—

1. *Because*  $Y$  is the centre of the circle  $XKB$ ;  
*Therefore*  $YX = YK$  .....Def. 15.
2. *Because*  $A$  is the centre of the circle  $RKC$ ;  
*Therefore*  $AK = AC$  .....Def. 15.
3. But  $AY = AP$  (*sides of equilateral triangle*);  
*Therefore* the remainder  $YK =$  the remainder  $PC$  ...Ax. 3.
4. But we showed above that  $YX$  was equal to  
 $YK$ ; *Therefore*  $PC$  and  $XY$  are each of  
them the same length as  $YK$ .

*Therefore* they are equal to one another.....Ax. 1.

WHEREFORE

*The straight line*  $PC$  *is drawn from*  $P$ , *equal to*  $XY$ .

Q.E.F.

NOTE.

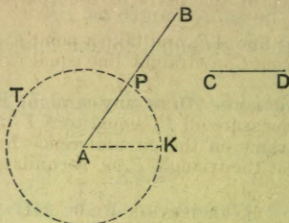
In writing out this Proposition, all the parts in brackets may be omitted.

## PROPOSITION III. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—*From the greater of two given straight lines to cut off a part equal to the less.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $AB$  and  $CD$  be the two given straight lines, of which  $AB$  is the greater;

We have to cut off a part from  $AB$ , of the same length as  $CD$ .



CONSTRUCTION—

1. From the point  $A$  draw a straight line  $AK$  equal to  $CD$ .....I. 2.
2. With centre  $A$ , and at the distance  $AK$ , describe the circle  $KPT$  cutting  $AB$  at  $P$ .

Now we have to prove that the part  $AP$ , cut off from  $AB$ , is equal to  $CD$ .

PROOF—

*Because*  $A$  is the centre of the circle  $KPT$ ;

*Therefore*  $AP = AK$ .....Def. 15.

*But*  $AK = CD$  (it was made equal).....Const.

*Therefore*  $AP = CD$ .....Ax. 1.

WHEREFORE from the straight line  $AB$ , etc.

Q.E.F.

## EXERCISES ON PROP. I.

1. From what other point could we draw straight lines to  $K$  and  $M$ , instead of  $P$ ?
2. Write out the Proposition, doing it in that way.

3. If we join  $P$  to  $K$  and  $M$ , and also the other point to  $K$  and  $M$ , prove that the figure we get is a rhombus.

4. How much of the circumferences of the two circles is absolutely necessary in order to construct the triangle?

## EXERCISES ON PROP. II.

1. There are, in all, eight ways of constructing the figure for this proposition, of which two are given above. For the point may be joined to either end of the line (two ways), then the equilateral triangle may be described on either side of the line (four ways), and its sides may be produced in either direction (making eight ways). Try and draw these, taking especial notice of the parts of the construction which are in brackets.

2. Draw a straight line  $AB$ , and take a point  $C$  in it. Construct the figure for drawing from  $C$ , a straight line equal to  $AB$ , and prove your result.

3. Why cannot we say—"Draw any straight line  $PE$  from  $P$ , and with the compasses measure off  $PC$  equal to  $XY$ "?

4. If the point  $A$  came on the circumference  $KBX$ , where would  $P$  lie? (Remember that the triangle  $PAY$  is equilateral.)

## EXERCISES ON PROP. III.

1. Produce the smaller of two straight lines, so that it may be equal to the greater.

2. In I. 3 why cannot we measure  $CD$  with a pair of compasses, and mark off the length on  $AB$ ?

3. Draw two straight lines, and make an isosceles triangle on the smaller one as base, and with its sides equal to the larger one.

4. From  $AB$  cut off a part equal to twice  $CD$ .

5. Draw the figure of this Proposition with all the construction lines required for Props. I. and II., and prove your result.

## PROPOSITION IV. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*IF two triangles have*

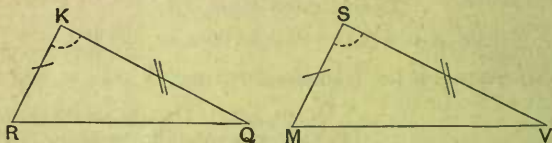
(What is given.) *Two sides of the one triangle equal to two sides of the other triangle, each to each,  
And have also the angles contained by these sides equal,*

*THEN*

(What is to be proved.) *They shall have their bases (or third sides) equal,  
And the two areas shall be equal,  
And the other angles shall be equal, each to each  
(viz., those to which the equal sides are opposite).*

PART. ENUN.—*IF the two triangles  $KRQ$  and  $SMV$  have*

(What is given.) *1. The side  $RK$   
2. and the side  $KQ$   
3. and their angle  $RKQ$*  } equal to { *the side  $MS$   
and the side  $SV$ ,  
( and their angle  $MSV$ .*



*THEN we have to prove*

(What is to be proved.) *1. that the base  $RQ$  is equal to the base  $MV$ ,  
2. that the area  $RKQ$  „ the area  $MSV$ ,  
3. that the angle  $KRQ$  „ the angle  $SMV$ ,  
4. that the angle  $KQR$  „ the angle  $SVM$ .*

CONSTRUCTION—

*Put the triangle  $KRQ$  on the triangle  $SMV$ ,  
so that the point  $K$  lies on the point  $S$ ,  
and the line  $KR$  lies along the line  $SM$ .*

PROOF—

1. *Because  $KR$  is equal to  $SM$ .....Given.  
Therefore  $KR$  coincides with  $SM$ ;  
and therefore the point  $R$  will lie on the point  $M$ .*



2. *Because*  $KR$  lies along  $SM$  (it was put there).....Const.  
     and the angle  $RKQ$  is equal to the angle  $MSV$ .Given.  
*Therefore*  $KQ$  will lie along  $SV$ .
3. *Because*  $KQ$  lies along  $SV$ .....Just proved.  
     and  $KQ$  is equal to  $SV$ .....Given.  
*Therefore*  $KQ$  coincides with  $SV$ ;  
 and *therefore* the point  $Q$  lies on the point  $V$ .

But also, the point  $R$  lies on the point  $M$ ...Proved in part 1.

4. *Because* the two ends of the line  $RQ$  lie on the two  
 ends of the line  $MV$ ,  
*Therefore* the line  $RQ$  coincides with the line  $MV$   
 (For, if it did not coincide, these two straight lines  
 would enclose a space, which is impossible)....Ax. 10.

THEREFORE we have now proved that

- |                                  |                               |                   |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. The base $RQ$ coincides with, | and is equal to the base $MV$ | Ax. 8             |
| 2. The area $RKQ$                | " " "                         | the area $MSV$ "  |
| 3. The angle $KRQ$               | " " "                         | the angle $SMV$ " |
| 4. The angle $KQR$               | " " "                         | the angle $SVM$ " |

WHEREFORE if two triangles have, etc.

QUOD ERAT DEMONSTRANDUM.  
 (Which was required to be proved.)

#### NOTES.

In the proof of this proposition, we first show that the left-hand sides of the triangle coincide; then that the angles between the sides coincide; and then that the right-hand sides coincide.

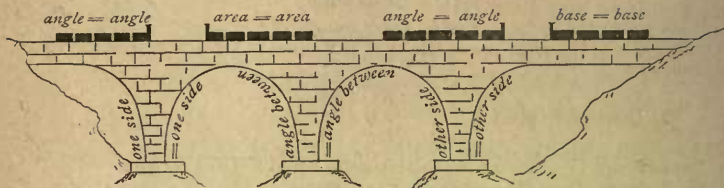
A triangle has seven parts, viz., three sides, three angles, and an area; and this Proposition shows that when a certain *three* of these parts are equal, in two triangles, then the other *four* must be equal also.

Having proved this Proposition, we shall now have to apply it to prove other Propositions; and, in doing so, it will, of course, not be necessary to prove it over again each time. The following illustration will perhaps make this clearer:—

When the Forth Bridge was completed, some very heavily laden trains were sent over it, of greater weight than it will be necessary ever to send over again. As the bridge stood this test, the ordinary traffic can now be sent over it without the need for testing it each time.

## NOTES.

Let us take a bridge to represent the Proposition.



Then the three pillars represent three facts.

No. 1. The *fact* that

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{One side in the} \\ \text{first triangle} \end{array} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{One side in the second} \\ \text{triangle.} \end{array} \right.$$

No. 3. The *fact* that

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Another side in the} \\ \text{first triangle} \end{array} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Another side in the second} \\ \text{triangle.} \end{array} \right.$$

No. 2 (between 1 and 3). The *fact* that

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{The angle between the sides} \\ \text{in the first triangle} \end{array} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The angle between the sides} \\ \text{in the second triangle.} \end{array} \right.$$

Now these pillars must rest on firm *foundations*; i.e., we must have good *reasons* for stating the three facts.

If, then, the three pillars and their foundations are secure, we can send four trains over the bridge, because it has been tested for these four in proving Prop. IV.

They are:—

1st train—The *fact* that the bases are equal.

2nd train—The *fact* that the areas are equal.

3rd train—The *fact* that the second angle = the second angle.

4th train—The *fact* that the third angle = the third angle.

We may not always have to send all four over at once; but we know that as our bridge has stood the test for four, we can trust it to bear any of them, provided that the three pillars are there, and their foundations firm.

It is easy to see that if one of the pillars is wanting our train will collapse at that point; or the same thing will occur if the pillar rests on an insecure foundation.

Remember that the first pillar is not one side of one triangle, or one side of each triangle, but a *fact*,\* and so for the other pillars.

Again, the trains represent, *not* bases, or areas, or angles, but *facts* about these bases, areas, and angles.

\* What fact?

EXERCISES.

1. If we have given  $\begin{cases} KR = SM, \\ RQ = MV, \\ \text{angle } RKQ = \text{angle } MSV, \end{cases}$   
does Prop. IV. then prove the triangles equal? Give a reason for your answer.

2. If we have given  $\begin{cases} KQ = SV, \\ RQ = MV, \\ \text{angle } KQR = \text{angle } SVM, \end{cases}$   
does Prop. IV. then prove the triangles equal? Give reasons.

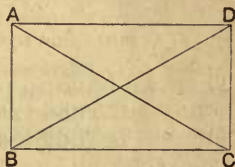
3. Prove Prop. IV. when we have given  
the side  $KR$   
and the side  $RQ$   
and their angle  $KRQ$  } equal to  $\begin{cases} \text{the side } SM, \\ \text{and the side } MV, \\ \text{and their angle } SMV. \end{cases}$

4.  $ABC$  is an equilateral triangle, and the angle  $BAC$  is divided into two equal parts by a straight line  $AD$ , which meets  $BC$  in the point  $D$ . Draw the figure. and say what you know about the triangles  $ABD$  and  $ACD$ , and what Prop. IV. proves about them.

5. If two triangles have two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, each to each; are the bases equal? Why?

6. Prove by Prop. IV. that if  $ABCD$  be an oblong, then  $AC=BD$ . (Take the triangles  $ABC$  and  $DCB$ .) *N.B.*—In an oblong the opposite sides are equal.

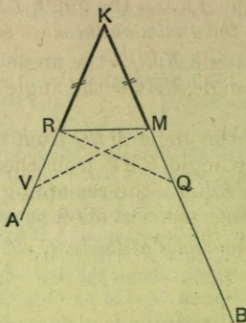
7. In Prop. IV. if the point  $R$  lay on  $M$ , and  $Q$  on  $V$ , and yet the straight line  $RQ$  did not coincide with  $MV$ , what would they look like? Show by a figure. What do you see from the figure?



## PROPOSITION V. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*The angles at the base of an isosceles triangle are (To be equal to each other; and if the equal sides be produced, proved.) the angles on the other sides of the base are also equal.*

PART. ENUN.—*Let  $KRM$  be an isosceles triangle, having the side  $KR$  equal to the side  $KM$ , (Given.) and their equal sides produced to  $A$  and  $B$  respectively.*



Then we have to prove

(To be proved.) 1. That the angle  $KRM$  = the angle  $KMR$ .  
2. That the angle  $ARM$  = the angle  $BMR$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. In  $RA$  take any point  $V$
2. From  $KB$  cut off  $KQ$  equal to  $KV$  ..... I. 3.
3. Join  $RQ$ ,  $VM$ .

PROOF—

1. In the two triangles  $KRQ$  and  $KMV$

*Because we have*

the sides $RK$	} equal to {	the sides $MK$ .....	Given.
and $KQ$		and $KV$ .....	Const.
and the angle $RKQ$		and the angle $MKV$ ...	The same.

*Therefore*

the base $RQ$	= the base $MV$	} ..... I. 4.
the angle $KRQ$	= the angle $KMV$	
the angle $KQR$	= the angle $KVM$	

(i.e., the angle  $MQR$  = the angle  $RVM$ )... Note on Def. 9.

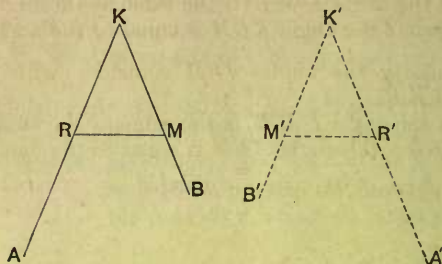




## PROPOSITION V. THEOREM. (Second Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—*The angles at the base of an isosceles triangle are*  
 (To be equal to each other; and if the equal sides be produced, the  
 proved.) *angles on the other side of the base are also equal.*

PART. ENUN.—*Let  $KRM$  be an isosceles triangle,*  
*having the side  $KR$  equal to the side  $KM$ ,*  
 (Given.) *and these equal sides produced to  $A$  and  $B$  respec-*  
*tively.*



Then we have to prove

- (To be proved.) 1. That the angle  $KRM =$  the angle  $KMR$ .  
 2. That the angle  $ARM =$  the angle  $BMR$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Suppose the figure to be taken up, turned over, and laid down again.

Then it will fall as in the dotted figure  $K'M'R'$ .

Put the first figure on the dotted one

So that the point  $K$  comes on the point  $K'$   
 and the line  $KRA$  on the line  $K'M'B'$ .

PROOF—

1. Because  $KR$  is equal to  $K'M'$  ..... Given.  
 Therefore the point  $R$  coincides with the point  $M'$ .
2. Because  $KR$  coincides with  $K'M'$  ..... Just proved.  
 and the angle  $RKM$  is equal to the angle  $M'K'R'$ .  
 Therefore  $KMB$  lies along  $K'R'A'$ .

3. Because  $KM$  lies along  $K'R'$  ..... Just proved.  
 and  $KM$  is equal to  $K'R'$  ..... Given.  
 Therefore  $M$  coincides with  $R'$ .  
 But also  $R$  coincides with  $M'$  ..... Proved above.  
 Therefore  $RM$  coincides with  $M'R'$ .

4. Therefore all the lines of the first figure lie along the lines of the second figure.\*

Therefore the angle  $KRM$  coincides with the angle  $K'M'R'$ .

But the angle  $K'M'R'$  is the same as the angle  $KMR$ .

Therefore the angle  $KRM$  is equal to the angle  $KMR$ .

Similarly the angle  $ARM$  coincides with the angle  $B'M'R'$ .

But the angle  $B'M'R'$  is the same as the angle  $BMR$ .

Therefore the angle  $ARM$  is equal to the angle  $BMR$ .

WHEREFORE the angle at the base, etc.

Q.E.D.

#### COROLLARY—

Every equilateral triangle is also equiangular.

#### NOTE.

A Corollary is a sort of minor conclusion, the truth of which easily follows from the main proposition.

#### EXERCISES.

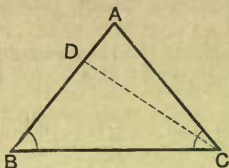
1. How far must the equal sides be produced?
2. Must they both be produced to the same length?
3. Prove the corollary.
4.  $ABCD$  is a rhombus, with  $BD$  joined. Prove that the angle  $ABC =$  the angle  $ADC$ .
5. Write out the proof of Prop. V. when the sides  $KR$  and  $RM$  are given equal and produced.
6. Is  $AR = BM$ ? Why?

\* Notice that the points  $A$  and  $B$  will not necessarily coincide with the points  $B'$  and  $A'$ , and so we cannot say that all the lines coincide.

## PROPOSITION VI. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*IF two angles of a triangle are equal to each other,  
THEN the sides which subtend (i.e., are opposite to)  
the equal angles, are also equal to each other.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, having the angle  $ABC$   
(Given.) equal to the angle  $ACB$ .



(To be proved.) We have to prove that the side  $AB$  = the side  $AC$ .

HYPOTHESIS—

Suppose that  $AB$  is greater than  $AC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

From  $BA$  cut off a part  $BD$  equal to  $AC$ .....I. 3.  
Join  $CD$ .

PROOF—

If in the triangles  $DBC$  and  $ACB$   
we have the sides  $DB$  } = { the sides  $AC$ .....Hyp. and Cons.  
                    and  $BC$  }        and  $CB$ .....The same.  
and the angle  $DBC$  }        and the angle  $ACB$ .....Given.

Therefore the area  $DBC$  = the area  $ACB$ .....I. 4.

Which is evidently absurd.

Therefore it is absurd to suppose  $AB$  is greater than  $AC$ .  
Similarly we could show that  $AB$  cannot be less than  $AC$ .  
Therefore  $AB$  must be equal to  $AC$ .

WHEREFORE if two angles of a triangle, etc.

Q.E.D.

COROLLARY—

Every equiangular triangle is also equilateral.



## NOTES.

This Proposition is called the *converse* of Prop. V.

Prop. V. proves  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{If the sides are equal} \\ \text{Then the angles are equal.} \end{array} \right.$

Prop. VI. proves  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{If the angles are equal} \\ \text{Then the sides are equal.} \end{array} \right.$

This method of proof is called "*Reductio ad absurdum*." In order to prove a fact we *suppose* that just the opposite may be possible. Then we show that this results in an absurdity, and therefore our supposition cannot be true, and therefore the original proposition is true. This is sometimes called an *Indirect* method of proof.

Avoid the mistake of saying, in the construction, "In  $AB$  take a point  $D$ ." We could not then even *suppose*  $BD$  to be equal to  $AC$ .

The word "*hypothesis*" means "*supposition*." The word is generally used in Euclid for a correct or an incorrect supposition. For the present, however, we shall always use it as denoting a *mere* supposition, which has to be shown to be incorrect.

## EXERCISES.

1. Prove the Proposition by supposing  $AB$  to be less than  $AC$ .
2. Prove the Corollary.
3. When we have shown that  $AB$  is not greater than  $AC$ , do we know that  $AB$  is equal to  $AC$ ?
4. Why is the area  $DBC$  not equal to the area  $ACB$ ?

## PROPOSITION VII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—On the same base, and on the same side of it, there cannot be two triangles having the sides terminated at one end of the base equal to each other, IF the sides terminated at the other end of the base be also equal to each other.

HYPOTHESIS—Suppose it possible that on the same base  $KQ$ , and on the same side of it, there can be two triangles,  $KLQ$  and  $KMQ$ , which have

(1.) the side  $KL =$  the side  $KM$  (both terminated at  $K$ ),  
and also (2.) the side  $QL =$  the side  $QM$  (both terminated at  $Q$ ),  
at the same time.

This Proposition has three cases.

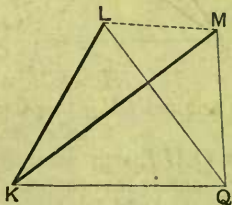
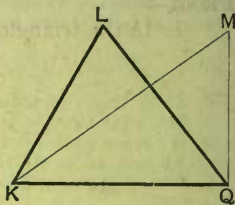
CASE I.—Where the vertex of each triangle falls outside the other triangle.

CONSTRUCTION—

Join the vertices  $L$  and  $M$ .

PROOF—

1. In the triangle  $KLM$ ,



If  $KL = KM$ .....Hypothesis.

Therefore the angle  $KLM =$  the angle  $KML$ .....I. 5.

But the angle  $QML$  is gr. than the angle  $KML$  }  
And the angle  $QLM$  is less than the angle  $KLM$  } Ax. 9.

Therefore the angle  $QML$  is much gr. than the angle  $QLM$ .

2. In the triangle  $QLM$ ,

If  $QM = QL$ .....Hypothesis.

Therefore the angle  $QML =$  the angle  $QLM$ .....I. 5.

But we have just proved (in 1) that the angle  $QML$  is much greater than the angle  $QLM$ ;

Therefore, *if the Hypothesis be true*, the angle  $QML$  is both equal to, and much greater than, the angle  $QLM$ ,  
Which is impossible ;

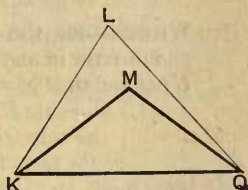
THEREFORE the supposition made above is *not* true for the first case.

CASE II.—Where the vertex ( $M$ ) of the *one* triangle falls *inside* the other triangle.

CONSTRUCTION—

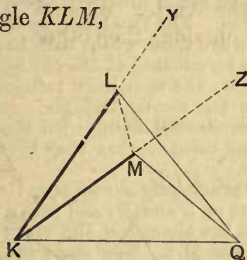
Join the vertices  $L$  and  $M$ .

Produce  $KL$  and  $KM$  to  $Y$  and  $Z$  respectively.



PROOF—

1. In the triangle  $KLM$ ,



*If*  $KL = KM$ .....Hypothesis.

Therefore the angle  $YLM =$  the angle  $ZML$  (on the other side of the base).....I. 5.

But the angle  $QML$  is gr. than the angle  $ZML$  }  
And the angle  $QLM$  is less than the angle  $YLM$  } Ax. 9.

Therefore the angle  $QML$  is much gr. than the angle  $QLM$ .

2. In the triangle  $QLM$ ,

*If*  $QM = QL$ .....Hypothesis.

Therefore the angle  $QML =$  the angle  $QLM$ .....I. 5.

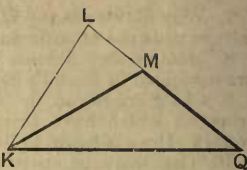
But we have just proved (in 1) that the angle  $QML$  is much greater than the angle  $QLM$  ;

Therefore, *if the Hypothesis be true*, the angle  $QML$  is both equal to, and much greater than, the angle  $QLM$ ,  
Which is impossible ;

THEREFORE the supposition made above is *not* true for the second case.

CASE III.—Where the vertex ( $M$ ) of one triangle falls on a side of the other triangle,

In this case it is *evident* that  $LQ$  cannot be equal to  $MQ$ ...Ax. 9.



WHEREFORE the supposition is  $K$  not true in any case, and

Upon the same base, and on the same side of it, etc.

Q.E.D.

#### NOTES.

In Cases I. and II. of this Proposition the given triangles are those shown by the thick and thin lines respectively of the upper figure. But in the proof we make use of other triangles, and the figure is given again, somewhat altered. The two triangles on which the learner has now to fix his attention are those which both have the dotted line  $LM$  as base, the thick lines terminated at the *left hand* end of  $KQ$  being the sides of the first triangle; the thin lines terminated at the *right hand* end of  $KQ$ , the sides of the second triangle. Both these triangles are *supposed* to be isosceles, and beginning with the base angles of the *left hand* triangle we change them so that they become the base angles of the *right hand* triangle.

This change may be practically shown thus:—

Put two drawing pins at  $L$  and  $M$ , and pass a fine string round them, so that its middle part lies along  $LM$  and the two ends along  $LK$  and  $MK$  (or  $YL$ ,  $ZM$  in Case II.). Now move the strings so that the one which was on  $KM$  (or  $ZM$ ) shall lie on  $QM$ , and the other on  $QL$ . In doing this we increase the angle that the string formed at  $M$ , and decrease the one that it formed at  $L$ .

These two new angles are those of the *right hand* triangle, and we show, as in the Proposition, that the supposition we made leads us to the conclusion that they are both equal and unequal to each other, which is evidently absurd.

This Proposition is only required in the proof of Prop. VIII.; and it becomes unnecessary if the Second Proof of that Proposition is used.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Can we have the side  $KL$  equal to the side  $KM$ ?
2. What is the method of proof called which is used in this Proposition? Explain the meaning of your answer.
3. What is the difference between the proof of Case I. and that of Case II.?
4. In Case III. are  $KL$  and  $KM$  equal? Give your reason.
5. In Case I. can we have  $QL = QM$ ? Show by a figure.
6. What is meant by "the vertex of a triangle"?



7. Why do we not say in Case I. "Where the vertex of one triangle falls outside the other triangle"?

8. Mention any Axioms which are assumed in this Proposition, and are not given in Euclid's list.

9. Can there be, on the same base and on the same side of it, two triangles which have their sides terminated at one end of the base equal? Draw a figure to illustrate your answer.

10. Can there be on the same base and on the same side of it, two triangles which have the sides of the first triangle equal to the sides of the second, each to each? Show by a figure.

11. Can there be on the same base two triangles which have the sides terminated at one end of the base equal, if those terminated at the other end of the base are also equal? Show by a figure.

12. Prove that on the same base, and on the same side of it, there can be only one equilateral triangle.

13. If a rhombus  $ABCD$  be folded along its diagonal  $AC$ , how will the points  $B$  and  $D$  lie with regard to each other?

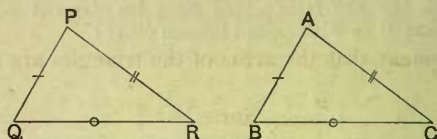
## PROPOSITION VIII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*IF two triangles have the three sides of the one equal (Given.) to the three sides of the other, each to each,*

*THEN the angle*  
 (To be proved.) *which is contained by any two sides of the one triangle*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is} \\ \text{equal to} \end{array} \right\}$   $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the angle contained by} \\ \text{the two corresponding} \\ \text{sides of the other tri-} \\ \text{angle.} \end{array} \right.$

PART. ENUN.—*LET the two triangles PQR and ABC have*

(Given.)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The sides } PQ \\ \text{and } QR \\ \text{and } RP \end{array} \right\} \text{ equal to } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the sides } AB \\ \text{and } BC \\ \text{and } CA, \text{ each to each.} \end{array} \right.$



THEN we have to prove that

- (To be proved.)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ The angle } PQR = \text{the angle } ABC, \\ 2. \text{ The angle } QRP = \text{the angle } BCA, \\ \text{and } 3. \text{ The angle } RPQ = \text{the angle } CAB. \end{array} \right.$

CONSTRUCTION—

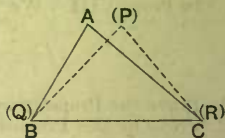
Put the triangle PQR on the triangle ABC  
 so that the point Q lies on the point B\*  
 and the side QR lies along the side BC.

PROOF—

Because  $QR = BC$ .....Given.

Therefore the point R will lie on the point C  
 and the side QR coincide with the side BC.

Now, if the other two sides PQ  
 and PR do not coincide with  
 the sides AB and AC, they will  
 take up some other position  
 such as (P)(Q)(R)



But in this case we should have on  
 the same base BC and on the same side of it  
 two triangles ABC and (P)(Q)(R), which have  $AB$   
 $= (P)(Q)$  and  $AC = (P)(R)$ , which is impossible.....I. 7.

\* Not P on A as in Prop. IV.

Therefore the two sides  $PQ$  and  $PR$  must coincide with the two sides  $AB$  and  $AC$ .

And since all the three sides of the triangle  $ABC$  coincide with all three sides of the triangle  $PQR$ ,

Therefore the angles also coincide, and so are equal.

THEREFORE we have proved as required that

1. The angle  $PQR$  = the angle  $ABC$ .
2. The angle  $QRP$  = the angle  $BCA$ .
- and 3. The angle  $RPQ$  = the angle  $CAB$ .

WHEREFORE,

*If two triangles have, etc.*

Q.E.D.

COROLLARY—

It is evident that the areas of the triangles are also equal.

#### NOTES.

The enunciation of this proposition is sometimes given as follows :—

*If two triangles have two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, each to each, and have likewise their bases equal, the angle which is contained by the two sides of the one shall be equal to the angle which is contained by the two sides, equal to them, of the other.*

Compare this enunciation with that in Prop. IV.

In both cases we have two triangles having two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, but

In Prop. IV. { We have, in addition, the contained angles equal,  
                  { To prove the bases equal.

In Prop. VIII. { We have, in addition, the bases equal,  
                      { To prove the contained angles equal.

So, in Prop. IV. { We begin by putting the vertex of the given  
                      { angle on the other vertex.

In Prop. VIII. { We begin by putting the given base on the  
                      { other base.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Prove the Proposition, beginning by putting the side  $PR$  on  $AC$ .
2. Prove by this Proposition that the diagonal of a rhomboid divides it into two parts of equal area.
3.  $ABC$  is an equilateral triangle, and  $D$  the middle point of  $BC$ . Prove by Prop. VIII. that the straight line  $AD$  divides the angle  $BAC$  into two equal angles.
4. Show what other positions the dotted triangle on page 38 might be supposed to take.

## PROPOSITION VIII. THEOREM. (SECOND PROOF.)

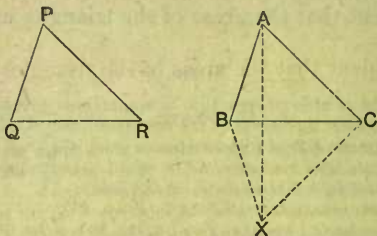
GEN. ENUN.—*If two triangles have the three sides of the one equal (Given.) to the three sides of the other, each to each,*

*THEN the angle which is contained by any two sides of the one triangle*  $\left. \vphantom{\begin{matrix} \text{is} \\ \text{equal} \\ \text{to} \end{matrix}} \right\}$  *is equal to*  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{the angle contained by} \\ \text{the two corresponding} \\ \text{sides of the other tri-} \\ \text{angle.} \end{matrix} \right.$

(To be proved.)

PART. ENUN.—LET the two triangles  $PQR$  and  $ABC$  have

(Given.)  $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{The sides } PQ \\ \text{and } QR \\ \text{and } RP \end{matrix} \right\} \text{equal to} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{the sides } AB \\ \text{and } BC \\ \text{and } CA, \text{ each to each.} \end{matrix} \right.$



Then we have to prove that

- (To be proved.)
1. The angle  $PQR =$  the angle  $ABC$ ,
  2. The angle  $QRP =$  the angle  $BCA$ ,
  - and 3. The angle  $RPQ =$  the angle  $CAB$ .

CONSTRUCTION.—

Put the triangle  $PQR$  so that the point  $Q$  lies on the point  $B$ , and the straight line  $QR$  on the straight line  $BC$ ;  
But, so that the vertex  $P$  shall fall on the opposite side of  $BC$ , from the vertex  $A$ .

It will then take the position  $BXC$  (since  $QR = BC$ ).  
Join  $AX$ .

PROOF—

1. *Because*  $BX = BA$ .....Given.  
*Therefore* the angle  $BXA =$  the angle  $BAX$ .....I. 5.

Similarly, the angle  $CXA =$  the angle  $CAX$ .



2. Therefore, adding the angle  $BXA$  to the angle  $CXA$ , and the angle  $BAX$  to the angle  $CAX$ ,  
The whole angle  $BXC =$  the whole angle  $BAC$ ....Ax. 2.  
i.e., the angle  $QPR =$  the angle  $BAC$ .

3. In the triangles  $PQR$  and  $ABC$ ,  
Because we have  
the sides  $QP$  } equal { the sides  $BA$ .....Given.  
and  $PR$  } to { and  $AC$ .....Given.  
and the angle  $QPR$  } { and the angle  $BAC$  Just proved.

Therefore the angle  $PQR =$  the angle  $ABC$  }  
and the angle  $QRP =$  the angle  $BCA$  } .....I. 4.

WHEREFORE, if two triangles have, etc.

Q.E.D.

COROLLARY—

It is evident that the areas of the triangles are also equal.

#### NOTES.

The enunciation of this Proposition is sometimes given as follows:—

*If two triangles have two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, each to each, and have likewise their bases equal, the angle which is contained by the two sides of the one shall be equal to the angle which is contained by the two sides, equal to them, of the other.*

Compare this enunciation with that in Prop. IV.

In both cases we have two triangles having two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, but

In Prop. IV. { We have, in addition, the contained angles equal,  
                  { To prove the bases equal.

In Prop. VIII. { We have, in addition, the bases equal,  
                      { To prove the contained angles equal.

So, in Prop. IV. { We begin by putting the vertex of the given  
                      { angle on the other vertex.

In Prop. VIII. { We begin by putting the given base on the  
                      { other base.

#### EXERCISES.

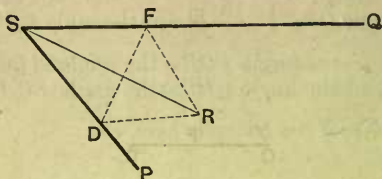
1. Prove the Proposition, beginning by putting the side  $PR$  on  $AC$ .
2. Prove by this Proposition that the diagonal of a rhomboid divides it into two parts of equal area.
3.  $ABC$  is an equilateral triangle, and  $D$  the middle point of  $BC$ . Prove by Prop. VIII. that the straight line  $AD$  divides the angle  $BAC$  into two equal angles.

## PROPOSITION IX. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—*To bisect a given rectilineal angle (that is, to divide it into two equal parts).*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $PSQ$  be the given rectilineal angle.

It is required to bisect it.



CONSTRUCTION—

1. In  $SP$  take any point  $D$ .
2. From  $SQ$  cut off a part  $SF$  equal to  $SD$ , and join  $DF$ ...I. 3.
3. On  $DF$ , on the side remote from  $S$ , describe an equi<sup>l</sup> triangle  $FDR$ ,.....I. 1.
4. Join  $SR$ .

Now we have to prove that  $SR$  bisects the angle  $PSQ$ .

PROOF.—*Because* in the triangles  $DSR$  and  $FSR$

$$\text{we have } \left. \begin{array}{l} DS \\ \text{and } SR \\ \text{and } RD \end{array} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} FS \dots \dots \dots \text{Const. (2.)} \\ \text{and } SR \dots \dots \dots \text{Common.} \\ \text{and } RF \dots \dots \dots \text{Const. (3.)} \end{array} \right.$$

Therefore the angle  $DSR$  = the angle  $FSR$ .....I. 8.  
*i.e.,* the angle  $PSR$  = the angle  $QSR$ , Note on Def. 9.

WHEREFORE, the angle  $PSQ$  is bisected by the straight line  $SR$ .  
 Q.E.F.

## EXERCISES.

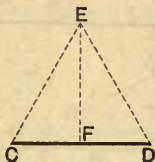
1. Where ought we to suppose the straight line (without breadth), represented by the mark  $SR$ , to lie?
2. Why do we say in the Construction (part 3) “on the side remote from  $S$ ”? Would not the other side do as well?
3. Divide a given angle into four equal parts.

PROPOSITION X. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—*To bisect a given finite straight line (i.e., to divide it into two equal parts).*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $CD$  be the given finite st. line.

It is required to bisect it.



CONSTRUCTION—

1. On  $CD$  describe an equilat<sup>l</sup> triangle  $CED$ .....I. 1.
2. Bisect the angle  $CED$ , by  $EF$ , cutting  $CD$  in  $F$ ,.....I. 9.

Then shall  $CD$  be bisected at  $F$ .

PROOF—

Because in the triangles  $CEF$  and  $DEF$ ,  
 we have  $CE$  } = {  $DE$  .....Const. (1).  
 and  $EF$  } and  $EF$  .....Common.  
 and their angle  $CEF$  } and their angle  $DEF$ ...Const.(2.)

Therefore the base  $CF$  = the base  $DF$  .....I. 4.

WHEREFORE, the given st. line  $CD$  is bisected at the pt.  $F$ .

Q.E.F.

EXERCISES.

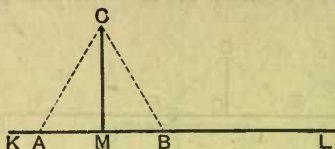
1. In Part 2 of the Construction, the mistake is sometimes made of saying, "In  $CD$  take a point  $F$ , and join  $EF$ ." Why is this wrong?
2. Why is the straight line said to be "finite"?
3. Divide a given straight line into eight equal parts.
4. Will this Construction enable us to divide a straight line into any number of equal parts?
5. Why do you learn how to bisect an angle, before learning how to bisect a straight line?

## PROPOSITION XI. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—*To draw a straight line at right angles to a given straight line, from a given point in the same.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $KL$  be the given st. line, and  $M$  the given point in it.

It is required to draw from  $M$  a st. line at right angles to  $KL$ .



CONSTRUCTION—

1. In  $MK$  take any point  $A$ .
2. From  $ML$  cut off  $MB$  equal to  $MA$ .....I. 3.
3. On  $AB$  describe an equil<sup>l</sup> triangle  $ABC$ .....I. 1.
4. Join  $CM$ .

Then shall  $CM$  be at right angles to  $KL$ .

PROOF—

*Because* in the triangles  $ACM$ ,  $BCM$ ,

$$\text{we have } \begin{cases} AC = BC & \dots\dots\dots \text{Const. (3).} \\ CM = CM & \dots\dots\dots \text{Common.} \\ MA = MB & \dots\dots\dots \text{Const. (2).} \end{cases}$$

*Therefore* the angle  $AMC$  = the angle  $BMC$ .....I. 8.

But when one straight line, etc., .....Def. 10.

*Therefore* each of the angles  $CMA$ ,  $CMB$   
is a right angle.

WHEREFORE  $CM$  has been drawn at right angles to  $KL$ .

Q.E.F.

## EXERCISES.

1. Why cannot we say in Part 2 of the Construction, “From  $LM$  cut off  $LB$  equal to  $KA$ ”?
2. Is it necessary that the triangle  $ABC$  should be equilateral?
3. Draw a straight line  $AB$ . From the point  $A$  draw a straight line at right angles to  $AB$ .

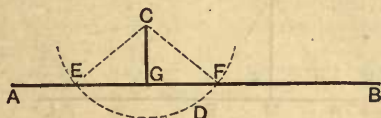


PROPOSITION XII. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—To draw a straight line perpendicular to a given straight line of unlimited length, from a given point without it.

PART. ENUN.—Let  $AB$  be the given st. line of unlimited length, and  $C$  the given pt. without it.

It is required to draw from  $C$  a st. line perpendicular to  $AB$ .



CONSTRUCTION—

1. Take any pt.  $D$ , on the other side of  $AB$ .
2. With cr.  $C$  and distance  $CD$ , describe the  $\odot^{le}$   $EDF$ , cutting  $AB$  in the pts.  $E$  and  $F$ .
3. Bisect  $EF$  in  $G$ , and join  $CG$ ,  $CE$ ,  $CF$ .....I. 10.

The straight line  $CG$  shall be perpendicular to  $AB$ .

PROOF—

Because in the triangles  $ECG$  and  $FCG$ ,

$$\text{we have } \begin{cases} EC = FC & \text{.....Const. (radii).} \\ CG = CG & \text{.....Common.} \\ GE = GF & \text{.....Const. (3).} \end{cases}$$

Therefore the angle  $EGC$  = the angle  $FGC$ .....I. 8.

But when one st. line, etc.....Def. 10.

WHEREFORE, from the pt.  $C$ ,  $CG$  has been drawn perpendicular to  $AB$ .

Q.E.F.

EXERCISES.

1. Why is the straight line said to be "of unlimited length"?
2. Would it do to take  $D$  on the same side of  $AB$  as  $C$  is?
3. How much of the circle  $EDF$  is it absolutely necessary to draw, in practice?
4. What difference would it make in the Proof if, instead of bisecting  $EF$  in  $G$  (Const. 3), we bisected the angle  $ECF$  by  $CG$  meeting  $AB$  in  $G$ ? Write out the proof for this method.

## PROPOSITION XIII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*The angles which one straight line makes with another straight line on the same side of it either are two right angles, or are together equal to two right angles.*

PART. ENUN.—Let the straight line  $XY$  make with the straight line  $AB$  on one side of it the angles  $XYA$ ,  $XYB$ .

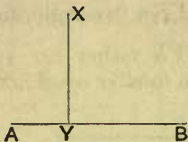


FIG. 1.

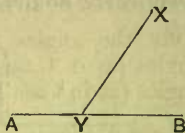


FIG. 2.

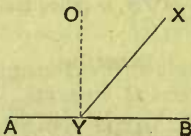
We have to prove that these either *are* two right angles, or *are together equal to two right angles*.

CASE I.—Where the angle  $XYA$  is equal to the angle  $XYB$  (Fig. 1).

PROOF—

By Definition 10 these *are* two right angles.

CASE II.—Where the angle  $XYA$  is not equal to the angle  $XYB$  (Fig. 2).



CONSTRUCTION—

At the pt.  $Y$  draw  $YO$  at right angles to  $AB$ .....I. 11.

PROOF—

Then, the angles  $OYA$ ,  $OYB$  are two right angles.

1. The angle  $OYB$  = the angles  $OYX$  and  $XYB$ ...(Evident).

Add to each the angle  $OYA$ .

Therefore the angles  $OYA$ ,  $OYB$  = the angles

$OYA$ ,  $OYX$ ,  $XYB$ .....Ax. 2.

2. The angle  $XYA =$  the angles  $OYA, OYX$ .....(Evident).  
Add to each the angle  $XYB$ .

Therefore the angles  $XYA, XYB =$  the angles  
 $OYA, OYX, XYB$ ..... Ax 2.

3. But also the angles  $OYA, OYB =$  the angles  
 $OYA, OYX, XYB$ .....Proved in (1).

Therefore the angles  $XYA, XYB =$  the angles  
 $OYA, OYB$ .....(which are two right angles).

That is, the angles  $XYA, XYB =$  two right angles.

WHEREFORE the angles  $XYA, XYB$  either are two right angles (as in Case I.), or are *together equal to* two right angles (as in Case II.), and,

*The angles which one straight line, etc.*

Q.E.D.

#### NOTES.

In the figure for Case II. there are two angles which are divided into parts,  $AYX$  and  $OYB$ . We first take the angle  $OYB$ , of which  $OY$  is an arm, and then  $AYX$ , of which  $XY$  is an arm. Then we add the angle which remains over, in each case.

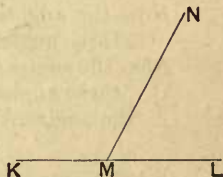
Notice the difference between "are two right angles" and "are equal to two right angles." These figures (5, 5) are two 5's, but these figures (4, 6) are *together equal to* two 5's.

Each of the angles  $AYX, BYX$ , is called the **Supplement** of the other.

Each of the angles  $OYX, XYB$ , is called the **Complement** of the other.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Quote Definition 10.
2. In the figure of Prop. V. point out any angles which are together equal to two right angles.
3. In this figure, are the angles  $KMN, NML$  two right angles?
4. Make an angle equal to half a right angle.
5. What is the size of the Supplement of this angle?



6. What is the size of its Complement?
7.  $KL$  is a straight line with  $MN$  standing on it. Bisect the angles  $NML, NMK$ . Prove that the two bisecting lines are perpendicular to each other.

## PROPOSITION XIII. THEOREM. (Second Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—*The angles which one straight line makes with another straight line on the same side of it, either are two right angles, or are together equal to two right angles.*

PART. ENUN.—Let the straight line  $XY$  make with the straight line  $AB$  on one side of it, the angles  $XYA$ ,  $XYB$ .

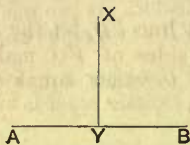


FIG. 1.

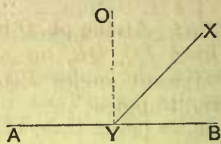


FIG. 2.

We have to prove that these  
either are two right angles,  
or, are together equal to two right angles.

CASE I.—Where the angle  $XYA$  is equal to the angle  $XYB$  (Fig. 1).

PROOF—

By Def. 10 these *are* two right angles.

CASE II.—Where the angle  $XYA$  is not equal to the angle  $XYB$  (Fig. 2).

CONSTRUCTION—

At the point  $Y$  draw  $YO$  at right angles to  $AB$  .....I. 11.

PROOF—

Then, the angles  $OYA$ ,  $OYB$ , are two right angles.

Now the angles  $XYA$ ,  $XYB$  are made up of the three angles  $AYO$ ,  $OYX$ ,  $XYB$ .

Also, the angles  $OYA$ ,  $OYB$  are made up of the same three angles.

$\therefore$  the angles  $XYA$ ,  $XYB$  = the angles  $OYA$ ,  $OYB$ ,  
i.e., = two right angles.

WHEREFORE, *the angles which one straight line, etc.*

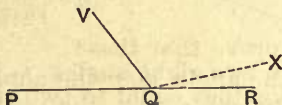
Q.E.D.



PROPOSITION XIV. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*If at a point in a straight line, two other straight lines on the opposite sides of it make the adjacent angles together equal to two right angles,*  
*THEN these two straight lines shall be in one and the same straight line.*

PART. ENUN.—At the pt.  $Q$  in the st. line  $VQ$ , let the two st. lines  $PQ$ ,  $QR$ , on opposite sides of  $VQ$  make the adjacent angles  $VQP$ ,  $VQR$  together equal to two right angles ;



Then shall  $PQ$ ,  $QR$  be in the same straight line.

HYPOTHESIS—

Suppose  $PQR$  is not a st. line, but that  $PQX$  is.

PROOF—

*If*  $PQX$  is a straight line.....Hyp.  
*Therefore* the angles  $VQP$ ,  $VQX$  = two rt. angles.....I. 13.  
 But the angles  $VQP$ ,  $VQR$  = two rt. angles....Given.  
*Therefore*  $VQP$ ,  $VQR$  =  $VQP$ ,  $VQX$ .....Ax. 1, 11.  
 Take away the common angle  $VQP$ .  
*Therefore* the angle  $VQR$  = the angle  $VQX$ .....Ax. 3.  
 (the whole = its part), which is absurd..Ax. 9.  
*Therefore* the supposition that  $PQ$  and  $QR$  are in one st. line is false.

In the same way we could prove that no other line but  $QR$  can be in the same st. line with  $PQ$ .

WHEREFORE  $PQR$  is a straight line, and,  
*If at a point, etc.*

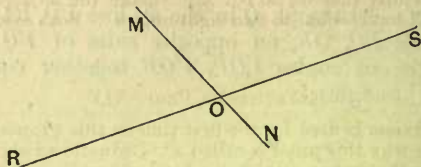
Q.E.D.

For Notes and Exercises see page 51.

## PROPOSITION XV. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*IF two straight lines cut one another,  
THEN the vertically opposite angles are equal to one another.*

PART. ENUN.—Let the two straight lines  $MN$  and  $RS$  cut each other at the point  $O$ ;



Then shall the angle  $MOS$  = the angle  $RON$ ,  
and the angle  $ROM$  = the angle  $NOS$ .

PROOF—

*Because*  $MO$  falls on the st. line  $RS$ ,  
*Therefore* the  $\angle^s MOR, MOS$  = two rt.  $\angle^s$  ..... I. 13.

*Because*  $RO$  falls on the st. line  $MN$ .  
*Therefore* the  $\angle^s MOR, RON$  = two rt.  $\angle^s$  ..... I. 13.

*Therefore* the  $\angle^s MOR, MOS$  = the  $\angle^s MOR, RON$ .... Ax. 1, 11.  
Take away the common  $\angle MOR$ ,

*Therefore* the  $\angle MOS$  = the  $\angle RON$ ..... Ax. 3.

Similarly, we could prove that  
the  $\angle ROM$  = the  $\angle NOS$ .

WHEREFORE, if two straight lines, etc.

Q.E.D.

COR. 1.—If two straight lines cut one another, the four angles which they make are together equal to four right angles.

COR. 2.—If any number of straight lines meet at a point, all the angles which they make, are together equal to four right angles.

## NOTES ON PROP. XIV.

This Proposition is the converse of Prop. XIII.

In Prop. XIII. we show that  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{If } PQR \text{ is a straight line} \\ \text{Then } VQP, VQR = \text{two right angles.} \end{array} \right.$

In Prop. XIV. we show that  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{If } VQP, VQR = \text{two right angles} \\ \text{Then } PQR \text{ is a straight line.} \end{array} \right.$

The point  $Q$  from which the two lines  $QP, QR$  are drawn need not be at the end of the line  $VQ$ .

Notice carefully that we do not say "make the adjacent angles two right angles," but "equal to two right angles." Both cases are included in this.

## EXERCISES ON PROP. XIV.

1. What Axiom is used for the first time in this Proposition?
2. Explain why this proof is called a "Reductio ad absurdum."
3. What is the first step in such a kind of proof?
4. Suppose the direction of  $QX$  came below  $QR$  instead of above it. Prove the proposition in this case.
5. Is  $VQR$  a right angle?
6. State in your own words the connexion between Props. XIII. and XIV.
7. Why do we say in the Particular Enunciation, "then shall  $PQ, QR$ , etc."?

## NOTE ON PROP. XV.

This Proposition shows that a man who goes along the roads  $MO, OS$ , has to make the same "turn" at the corner  $O$ , as if he went along  $RO, ON$ .

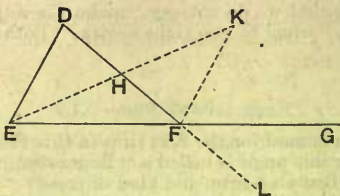
## EXERCISES ON PROP. XV.

1. Why is Axiom 11 needed in this Proposition?
2. Prove the Corollaries.
3. Prove that the angle  $ROM =$  the angle  $NOS$ .
4. If  $MO = ON$ , and  $RO = OS$ , and  $MR, NS$  be joined, prove that the triangle  $MOR =$  the triangle  $NOS$ .
5. Bisect the angle  $MOS$  by a straight line  $OX$ , and produce  $XO$  to  $Y$ . Prove that  $OY$  bisects the angle  $RON$ .
6. Can an acute angle be vertically opposite to an obtuse angle? Why?
7. What is the converse of this Proposition?
8. If  $AOB, XOY$  are two diameters of a circle, show that  $AX$  is equal to  $BY$ .

## PROPOSITION XVI. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*IF one side of a triangle be produced,  
THEN the exterior angle is greater than either of the interior  
opposite angles.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $DEF$  be a triangle having its side  $EF$  produced to  $G$ ;



Then shall the exterior angle  $DFG$  be greater than the interior opposite angle  $EDF$ , and also greater than the interior opposite angle  $DEF$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. Bisect  $DF$  in  $H$ , and join  $EH$ .....I. 10.
2. Produce  $EH$  to  $K$  so that  $HK = EH$ .....I. 3.
3. Join  $KF$ .

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore$  in the  $\triangle$ s  $DHE$  and  $FHK$   
 we have  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} DH = FH \dots\dots\dots \text{Const.} \\ HE = HK \dots\dots\dots \text{Const.} \\ \text{and } \angle DHE = \angle FHK \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 15.} \end{array} \right.$   
 $\therefore \angle EDH = \angle KFH \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$

But  $\angle DFG$  is greater than the  $\angle KFH$ .

$\therefore \angle DFG$  is greater than the  $\angle EDF$ .

2. Similarly, if we produce  $DF$  to  $L$ , and bisect  $EF$ , we could prove that the  $\angle EFL$  is greater than the  $\angle DEF$ .

But  $\angle EFL = \angle DFG \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 15.}$

$\therefore \angle DFG$  is greater than  $\angle DEF$ .

WHEREFORE, if one side, etc.

Q.E.D.



## NOTES.

In the Construction of this Proposition we bisect that arm of the exterior angle which is not produced, join this point to the opposite angle, and after producing the new line so as to make it as long again, join the new end of it to the vertex of the exterior angle.

The first part of the Proof shows that the exterior angle is greater than that interior opposite angle which is *opposite to the produced side*.

Notice that in the triangles  $DEH$  and  $FKH$ ,  $D$  corresponds to  $F$ , and  $E$  to  $K$ .

Of the three interior angles of the triangle  $DEF$ , the two,  $DEF$  and  $EDF$ , are *opposite* to the exterior angle  $DFG$ , and the third,  $DFE$ , is interior and adjacent to  $DFG$ .

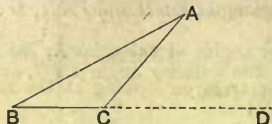
## EXERCISES.

1. Which is the greater angle,  $KFG$  or  $KEF$ , and why?
2. Is the exterior angle of a triangle greater than the *interior adjacent* angle? Draw a figure, and give the reasons for your answer.
3. Why would it not be correct to say "Because  $DH$ ,  $HE$  are equal to  $KH$ ,  $HF$ , each to each, etc."? What is the correct form?
4. Prove, in full, the second part of the Proposition.
5. Prove that  $DE = FK$ .
6. Prove that the area of the triangle  $DEF$  = the area of the triangle  $KEF$ .
7. Prove the Proposition when the side  $DE$  is produced.
8. Make a list of all the Propositions between I. and XV., which are used, *directly* or *indirectly*, for the Proof of this Theorem. (Begin with the highest number, and work backwards.)

## PROPOSITION XVII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*Any two angles of a triangle are together less than two right angles.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$  be a triangle ;



Then shall the  $\angle^s ABC, ACB$  be less than two rt.  $\angle^s$ ;  
and also the  $\angle^s BAC, ACB$  be less than two rt.  $\angle^s$ ;  
and also the  $\angle^s BAC, ABC$  be less than two rt.  $\angle^s$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Produce the side  $BC$  to  $D$ .

PROOF—

- $\therefore \angle ACD$  is the ext<sup>r</sup>  $\angle$  of the  $\triangle ABC$ .  
 $\therefore \angle ACD$  is gr. than  $\angle ABC$ .....I. 16.  
 Add to each the  $\angle ACB$ .  
 $\therefore \angle^s ACD, ACB$  are gr. than  $\angle^s ABC, ACB$ ....Ax. 4.  
 But  $\angle^s ACD, ACB =$  two rt.  $\angle^s$ .....I. 13.  
 $\therefore \angle^s ABC, ACB$  are less than two rt.  $\angle^s$ .

Similarly we can prove that

- $\angle^s BAC, ACB$  are less than two rt.  $\angle^s$ .  
 $\angle^s BAC, ABC$  are less than two rt.  $\angle^s$ .

WHEREFORE, *any two angles, etc.*

Q.E.D.

## EXERCISES.

1. Prove that the  $\angle^s BAC, ACB$  are less than two right angles.
2. Prove that a triangle cannot have two right angles, or two obtuse angles.
3. Prove that only one perpendicular can be drawn to a straight line from a given external point.
4. How many perpendiculars can be drawn to a straight line from a given point *in* it?
5. Prove the Proposition without producing a side, by taking a point  $D$  in  $BC$ , and joining  $AD$ . Use Prop. XVI.

## AXIOM 12.

*If a straight line meet two other straight lines so as to make the two interior angles on the same side of it together less than two right angles, these two straight lines being produced far enough, shall at length meet on that side on which are the angles which are less than two right angles.*

## NOTES.

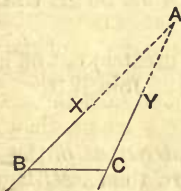
This Axiom will be seen, on looking at the figure below, to be the converse of Prop. XVII.

In the Proposition we prove that

- { Because  $ABC$  is a triangle,
- { Therefore the  $\angle^s ABC, ACB$  are less than two rt.  $\angle^s$ .

The Axiom states that

- { If the  $\angle^s XBC, YCB$  are less than two rt.  $\angle^s$ ,
- { Then  $BX, CY$ , if produced, will form a triangle with  $BC$ ,  
i.e. that they will meet at some point  $A$ .



As this so-called Axiom is not quite obvious to our common sense, it has been proposed to substitute for Axiom 12 the following, which is called—

## PLAYFAIR'S AXIOM.

*“Two straight lines which intersect cannot both be parallel to the same straight line.”*

## EXERCISES.

1. Draw a figure to illustrate Playfair's Axiom, and explain it.
2. From Axiom 12 show that if “the two interior angles on the same side of the line” were *greater* than two right angles, the lines, when produced, would meet on the other side.
3. What do you suppose would be the case if the two angles were *equal* to two right angles?
4. Explain the meaning of the word “converse” used above. Give some examples.

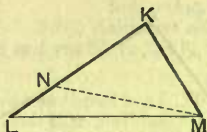
## PROPOSITION XVIII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*IF one side of a triangle be greater than another side, THEN the angle opposite to the greater side is greater than the angle opposite to the less.*

OR

*The greater side of every triangle is opposite to the greater angle.*

PART. ENUN.—In the  $\triangle KLM$  let the side  $KL$  be greater than  $KM$ ;



Then shall the  $\angle KML$  be gr. than the  $\angle KLM$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. From  $KL$  (the greater) cut off a part  $KN = KM$ ....I. 3.
2. Join  $NM$ .

PROOF—

- $\therefore KNM$  is the ext<sup>r</sup>  $\angle$  of the  $\triangle LNM$ ,  
 $\therefore \angle KNM$  is gr. than  $\angle NLM$  (i.e.  $\angle KLM$ ).....I. 16.  
 But  $\angle KNM = \angle KMN$  ( $\because KN = KM$ ).....I. 5.  
 $\therefore \angle KMN$  is gr. than  $\angle KLM$ .  
 Much more then is  $\angle KML$  gr. than  $\angle KLM$ .

WHEREFORE, the greater side, etc.

Q.E.D.

NOTE.

The second form of the General Enunciation in the XVIIIth and XIXth Propositions is the one given by Euclid ; but in this it is difficult to understand what is given and what has to be proved.

## EXERCISES.

1. What is the connexion between this Proposition and the Vth ?
2. Prove that the greatest side of every triangle has the greatest angle opposite to it (i.e. greatest of three).
3. In the figure of Prop. V. prove that the angle  $KRQ$  is greater than the angle  $KQR$ .



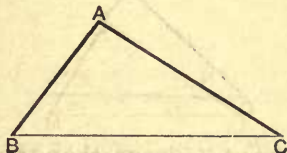
PROPOSITION XIX. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*IF one angle of a triangle be greater than another angle,  
THEN the side opposite to the greater angle is greater than the side opposite to the less.*

OR

*The greater angle of every triangle is subtended by the greater side.*

PART. ENUN.—In the  $\triangle ABC$  let the  $\angle ABC$  be greater than the  $\angle ACB$ ;



Then shall  $AC$  be greater than  $AB$ .

PROOF—

If  $AC$  be not greater than  $AB$ ,

Then  $AC$  must be equal to, or less than,  $AB$ .

1. If  $AC = AB$ , then  $\angle ACB = \angle ABC$ .....I. 5.

But it does not,  $\therefore AC$  is not equal to  $AB$ .

2. If  $AC$  be less than  $AB$ ,  $\angle ABC$  is less than  $\angle ACB$ ..I. 18.

But it is not,  $\therefore AC$  is not less than  $AB$ .

$\therefore AC$  must be greater than  $AB$ .

WHEREFORE, *the greater angle, etc.*

Q.E.D.

NOTES.

As in the Vth and VIth Props., we have first the *sides* given equal (I. 5), and then the *angles* given equal (I. 6); so in the XVIIIth and XIXth we have first the *sides* given unequal (I. 18), and then the *angles* given unequal (I. 19). In both cases the latter Proposition is proved by a "Reductio ad Absurdum."

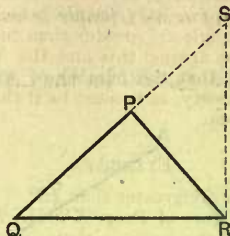
EXERCISES.

1. What is the connexion between Props. XIX. and VI.?
2. In the figure of Prop. XI. prove that  $CA$  is greater than  $CM$ .
3. Show that in a right-angled triangle the hypoteneuse is the greatest side.

## PROPOSITION XX. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*Any two sides of a triangle are together greater than the third side.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $PQR$  be the triangle ;



Then shall  $QP, PR$  be together greater than  $QR$ ,  
 $PQ, QR$  be together greater than  $PR$ ,  
 $QR, RP$  be together greater than  $PQ$ .

CONSTRUCTION—Produce  $QP$  to  $S$ , so that  $PS = PR$ ,.....I. 3.  
 Join  $SR$ .

PROOF—

$\therefore PS = PR$ .....Const.

$\therefore \angle PSR = \angle PRS$ .....I. 5.

But  $\angle QRS$  is greater than  $\angle PRS$ .....Ax. 9.

$\therefore \angle QRS$  is greater than  $\angle PSR$  (i.e.,  $QSR$ ).

$\therefore$  the side  $QS$  (opposite the  $\angle QRS$ ) is greater than  
 the side  $QR$  (opposite the  $\angle QSR$ ) .....I. 19.

But  $QS = QP, PR$ .....Const.

$\therefore$  the sides  $QP, PR$  are together greater than  $QR$ .

Similarly, we could prove that

$PQ, QR$  are together greater than  $PR$ ,  
 and  $QR, RP$  are together greater than  $PQ$ .

WHEREFORE, any two sides, etc.

Q.E.D.

## NOTES.

This Proposition shows us that if we have to go from a place  $Q$  to a place  $R$ , it will be shorter to go along the straight road  $QR$ , than by the roads round by  $P$ .

Common sense tells us this, and in many editions of Euclid the truth of it is assumed, by giving the following definition of a straight line:—

“A straight line is the shortest distance between two points.”

“Proclus, in his commentary, says, that though the truth of it be manifest to our senses, yet it is science which must give the reason why two sides of a triangle are greater than the third; but the right answer to this objection against this and the XXIst, and some other plain Propositions, is, that the number of Axioms ought not to be increased without necessity, as it must be if these Propositions be not demonstrated.”—*Simson*.

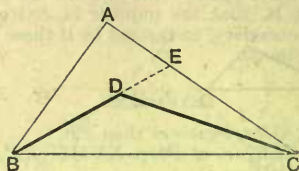
## EXERCISES.

1. Prove that  $PQ$ ,  $QR$  are greater than  $PR$ .
2. Show that, in the figure of Prop. XVIII.,  $KN$ ,  $NM$  together are less than  $KL$ ,  $LM$  together.
3. If a point  $O$  be taken within a triangle  $ABC$ , and  $OA$ ,  $OB$ ,  $OC$  joined; prove by this Proposition that twice the sum of  $OA$ ,  $OB$ ,  $OC$  is greater than the sum of the sides of the triangle.

## PROPOSITION XXI. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*IF from the ends of the side of a triangle there be drawn two straight lines to a point within the triangle, THEN these two shall be less than the other two sides of the triangle, but shall contain a greater angle.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ , and from the pts.  $B, C$ , let the two st. lines  $BD, CD$  be drawn to a pt.  $D$  within the  $\triangle$ ;



Then shall 1.  $BD, DC$  be less than  $BA, AC$ .  
 2. The  $\angle BDC$  be greater than the  $\angle BAC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Produce  $BD$  to meet  $AC$  in  $E$ .

PROOF—

1. (a) In the  $\triangle BAE$   
 the sides  $BA, AE$  are greater than  $BE$ .....I. 20.  
 Add to each  $EC$ ,  
 $\therefore BA, AE, EC$  (i.e.  $BA, AC$ ) are gr. than  $BE, EC$ .
- (b) In the  $\triangle CED$   
 the sides  $CE, ED$  are greater than  $CD$ .....I. 20.  
 Add to each  $DB$ ,  
 $\therefore CE, ED, DB$  (i.e.  $BE, EC$ ) are gr. than  $CD, DB$ .  
 $\therefore BA, AC$  are much greater than  $CD, DB$ .
2.  $\therefore \angle BDC$  is the ext<sup>r</sup>  $\angle$  of the  $\triangle CED$ ,  
 $\therefore \angle BDC$  is greater than  $\angle DEC$  (or  $\angle BEC$ ).....I. 16.  
 $\therefore \angle BEC$  is the ext<sup>r</sup>  $\angle$  of the  $\triangle AEB$ ,  
 $\therefore \angle BEC$  is greater than the  $\angle BAE$  (or  $\angle BAC$ ).....I. 16.  
 $\therefore \angle BDC$  is much greater than  $\angle BAC$ .

WHEREFORE, if from the ends, etc.

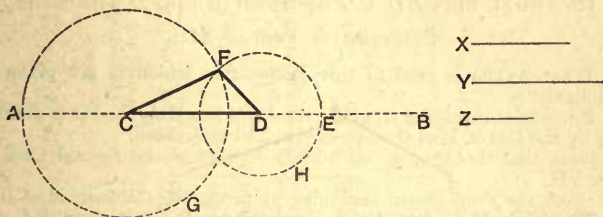
Q.E.D.



PROPOSITION XXII. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—*To make a triangle of which the sides shall be equal to three given straight lines, any two of which are together greater than the third.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $X, Y, Z$  be the three given lines, of which any two are together greater than the third;



It is required to make a  $\triangle$  having its sides respectively equal to  $X, Y, Z$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. Take a straight line  $AB$  terminated at the end  $A$ , but unlimited in length towards  $B$ .
2. Cut off  $AC = X, CD = Y, DE = Z$ .....I. 3.
3. With centre  $C$  and radius  $CA$ , describe  $\odot^{\text{le}} AFG$ .
4. With centre  $D$  and radius  $DE$ , describe  $\odot^{\text{le}} FEH$ , and let the  $\odot^{\text{ces}}$  cut in  $F$ .
5. Join  $CF, FD$ .

Then shall  $CFD$  be the required triangle.

PROOF—

$\therefore C$  is cr. of  $\odot^{\text{le}} AFG$ ,  
 $\therefore CF = CA = X$ .....Def. 15. and Const.  
 $\therefore D$  is cr. of  $\odot^{\text{le}} FEH$ ,  
 $\therefore DF = DE = Z$ .....Def. 15. and Const.

And we made  $CD = Y$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore CF = X, CD = Y, DF = Z$ .

WHEREFORE, a triangle has been made, etc.

Q.E.F.

## NOTES ON PROP. XXI.

This Proposition shows that if we have to go from a place  $B$  to a place  $C$ , it is shorter to go by the roads  $BD$ ,  $DC$ , than by  $BA$ ,  $AC$ ; and we have to make the sharper turn when we go by  $A$ . As in Prop. XX., the fact is quite evident to our common sense.

Notice that we first show that the road by  $A$  is longer than the road by  $E$ , and then that the road by  $E$  is longer than that by  $D$ ; therefore it is decidedly nearer to go by  $D$  than by  $A$ .

## EXERCISES ON PROP. XXI.

1. What Axiom is used in this Proposition which is not given in Euclid's list?
2. Prove that in sailing from St. Bees Head to Holyhead it is shorter to go by the Isle of Man than by Strangford in Ireland.
3. Show that this Proposition affords a proof of the Second Case of Prop. VII.
4. Prove the Proposition, beginning by producing  $CD$  instead of  $BD$ .
5. If a point  $P$  be taken within a quadrilateral  $ABCD$ , and  $PA$ ,  $PC$  joined, prove that the sides of the new quadrilateral are together less than the sides of the original one.

## EXERCISES ON PROP. XXII.

1. What condition is made about the length of the three given lines in this Proposition, and why?
2. Could triangles be formed with their sides equal to lines of the following lengths respectively?—

$$(i.) \begin{cases} 3 \text{ inches.} \\ 2 \text{ inches.} \\ 5 \text{ inches.} \end{cases} \quad (ii.) \begin{cases} 4 \text{ inches.} \\ 3 \text{ inches.} \\ 2 \text{ inches.} \end{cases} \quad (iii.) \begin{cases} 5 \text{ inches.} \\ 3 \text{ inches.} \\ 4 \text{ inches.} \end{cases} \quad (iv.) \begin{cases} 1 \text{ inch.} \\ 4 \text{ inches.} \\ 2 \text{ inches.} \end{cases}$$

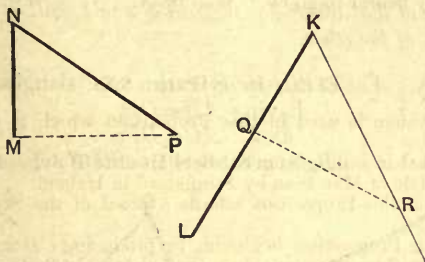
Draw figures to illustrate your answers, using the same construction as in the Proposition.

3. With the above method of construction how many triangles do we get with their sides the required length?
4. What earlier Proposition is a special case of this?
5. How much of the circumferences of the two circles is it necessary to draw?

## PROPOSITION XXIII. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—*At a given point in a given straight line to make a rectilineal angle equal to a given rectilineal angle.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $KL$  be the given straight line,  $K$  the given point, and  $MNP$  the given angle;



It is required to make at  $K$  an angle equal to  $MNP$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. In  $NM$ ,  $NP$  take any pts.\*  $M$ ,  $P$ , and join  $MP$ .
2. On  $KL$  make a  $\triangle KQR$ , having its sides  $KQ$ ,  $QR$ ,  $RK$  respectively equal to  $NM$ ,  $MP$ ,  $PN$ .....I. 22.

Then shall the  $\angle QKR = \text{the } \angle MNP$ .

PROOF—

$\therefore$  in the  $\triangle^s QKR$  and  $MNP$

we have  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} KQ = NM \\ QR = MP \\ RK = PN \end{array} \right\}$  .....Const.

$\therefore$  the  $\angle QKR = \angle MNP$  .....I. 8.

WHEREFORE, at the given pt.  $K$ , etc.

Q.E.F.

## EXERCISES.

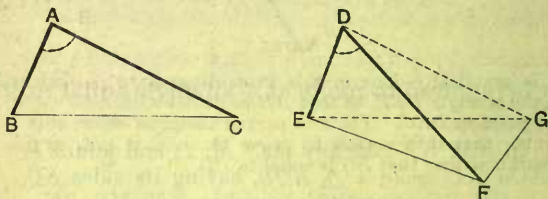
1. Construct a triangle, having given the length of two of its sides, and the angle between them.
2. Draw the figure of this Proposition, putting in all the construction, as in Prop. XXII.
3. Draw any quadrilateral, and construct by Props. XXII., XXIII., another quadrilateral with all its sides and angles equal to those of the first quadrilateral.

\* In Practice,  $NM$ ,  $MP$ , are usually taken of the same length.

## PROPOSITION XXIV. THEOREM. (FIRST PROOF.)

GEN. ENUN.—*If two triangles have  
Two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, each to each,  
But the angles contained by these sides unequal,  
THEN  
the base of that which has the greater angle shall be greater than  
the base of the other.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be the two triangles,  
having  $AB = DE$ ,  
and  $AC = DF$ ,  
But  $\angle BAC$  greater than  $\angle EDF$ ;



THEN shall  $BC$  be greater than  $EF$ .

*Of the two sides  $DE$ ,  $DF$ , let  $DE$  be the one which is  
not greater than the other.*

CONSTRUCTION—

1. At the point  $D$ , in the st. line  $ED$ , make the  $\angle EDG$  equal to the  $\angle BAC$ .....I. 23.
2. Make  $DG = DF$  or  $AC$ .....I. 3.
3. Join  $GE$  and  $GF$ .

PROOF—

1. In the  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $DEG$ ,  
(To prove that  $BC = EG$ .)  $\therefore \begin{cases} BA = ED \dots \dots \dots \text{Given.} \\ AC = DG \dots \dots \dots \text{Const. (2).} \\ \text{and } \angle BAC = \angle EDG \dots \dots \dots \text{Const. (1).} \end{cases}$   
 $\therefore BC = EG \dots \dots \dots \text{I. 4.}$



2.  $\therefore DF = DG$ .....Const. (2).  
 (To prove  $\therefore \angle DGF = \angle DFG$ .....I. 5.  
 $EG$  gr. But  $\angle DGF$  is gr. than  $\angle EGF$ .....Ax. 9.  
 than  $EF$ .)  $\therefore \angle DFG$  is gr. than  $\angle EGF$ ,  
 and  $\angle EFG$  is gr. than  $\angle DFG$ .....Ax. 9.  
 $\therefore \angle EFG$  is much gr. than  $\angle EGF$ .
3. And  $\therefore$  in the  $\triangle EFG$   
 $\angle EFG$  is gr. than  $\angle EGF$ .....Just proved.  
 $\therefore EG$  is gr. than  $EF$ .....I. 19.  
 But  $EG = BC$ .....Proved above.  
 $\therefore BC$  is gr. than  $EF$ .

WHEREFORE, if two triangles, etc.

Q.E.D.

#### NOTES.

What is practically done in this Proposition is to put the triangle  $ABC$  on the triangle  $DEF$ , so that  $AB$  coincides with  $DE$ .  $ABC$  then takes the position  $DEG$ . The first part of the proof shows this.

Remember that it is useless to prove that  $EG$  is greater than  $EF$ , unless you know first that  $EG$  is equal to  $BC$ .

#### EXERCISES.

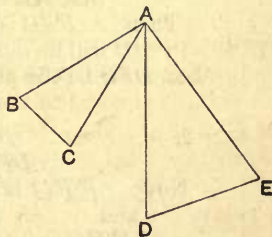
1. Draw figures to show the result of the above construction in the case where  $DE$  is greater than  $DF$ .

2. Suppose  $DE$  were greater than  $DF$ , what must then be done? Draw the figure in this case.

3. To which earlier Proposition is Prop. XXIV. similar? What is the difference between them?

4. In the accompanying figure,  $ABC$  and  $ADE$  are isosceles triangles, with a common vertex  $A$ . Join  $CD$ ,  $BE$ , and prove that  $BE$  is greater than  $CD$ .

5. If the angle  $DAE$  is greater than the angle  $BAC$ , prove that  $CE$  is greater than  $BD$ .



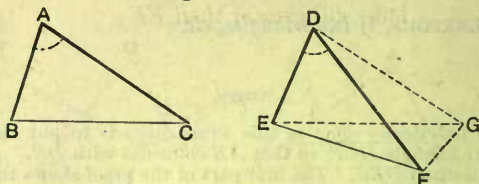
#### EXERCISES ON PROP. XXV.

1. What is this method of proof called? Why?
2. Of what Proposition is this the converse?

## PROPOSITION XXIV. THEOREM. (Second Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—*IF two triangles have  
Two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, each to each,  
But the angles contained by these sides unequal,  
THEN the base of that which has the greater angle shall be  
greater than the base of the other.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be the two triangles,  
having  $AB = DE$ ,  
and  $AC = DF$ ,  
but  $\angle BAC$  greater than  $\angle EDF$ ;



THEN shall  $BC$  be greater than  $EF$ .

*Of the two sides  $DE$ ,  $DF$ , let  $DE$  be not gr. than  $DF$ .*

PROOF—1.  $\therefore AB = DE$ .....Given.

$\therefore AB$  can coincide with  $DE$ ,

Put the triangle  $ABC$  on the triangle  $DEF$ , so  
that  $AB$  coincides with  $DE$ .

Then  $\therefore \angle BAC$  is greater than  $\angle EDF$ ,.....Given.

$\therefore AC$  will lie outside the triangle  $DEF$ .

Let  $DEG$  be the position of the triangle  $ABC$ .

Join  $FG$ .

2.  $\therefore DF = DG$ .....Given.

$\therefore \angle DFG = \angle DGF$ .....I. 5.

Now  $\angle EFG$  is greater than  $\angle DFG$ ,  
and  $\angle EGF$  is less than  $\angle DGF$  } .....Ax. 9.

$\therefore \angle EFG$  is greater than  $\angle EGF$ ,

$\therefore EG$  is greater than  $EF$ .....I. 19.

i.e.,  $BC$  is greater than  $EF$ .

WHEREFORE, *if two triangles, etc.*

Q.E.D.

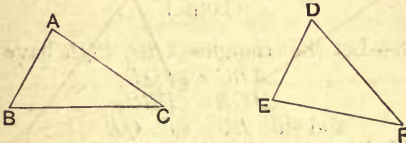
EXERCISES. See page 65.

PROPOSITION XXV. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*IF two triangles have*

*Two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, each to each,  
But the base of the one greater than the base of the other;  
THEN the angle contained by the two sides of the triangle  
with the greater base, shall be greater than the angle  
contained by the corresponding sides of the other triangle.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be the two triangles,  
having  $AB = DE$   
and  $AC = DF$   
but  $BC$  greater than  $EF$ ;



THEN shall  $\angle BAC$  be greater than  $\angle EDF$ .

PROOF—

If  $\angle BAC$  be not greater than  $\angle EDF$ , it must be  
either equal to it, or less than it.

(1) If  $\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ ,  
Then  $BC = EF$  ..... I. 4.  
But this is not the case, ..... Given.  
 $\therefore \angle BAC$  is not equal to  $\angle EDF$ .

(2) If  $\angle BAC$  be less than  $\angle EDF$ ,  
Then  $BC$  is less than  $EF$  ..... I. 24.  
But neither is this the case, ..... Given.  
Hence  $\angle BAC$  must be greater than  $\angle EDF$ .

WHEREFORE, if two triangles, etc.

Q.E.D.

NOTE.

To remember which enunciation is the 24th and which the 25th, notice that the 24th corresponds to the 4th, and the 25th to the 8th. Compare the Enunciations of these Propositions one with another.

EXERCISES. See page 65.

## PROPOSITION XXVI. THEOREM. (First Proof).

GEN. ENUN.—*IF two triangles have*

*Two angles of the one equal to two angles of the other, each to each, and one side equal to one side, viz.,  
either (1) the side adjacent to the equal angles,  
or (2) a side opposite to an equal angle in each,*

*THEN*

*the remaining sides shall be equal, each to each,  
and the third angle of the one triangle shall be equal to  
the third angle of the other.*

## CASE I.

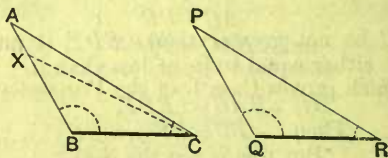
PART. ENUN.—Let the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $PQR$  have

$$\angle ABC = \angle PQR,$$

$$\angle ACB = \angle PRQ,$$

and side  $BC =$  side  $QR$

( $BC$  being adjacent to the  $\angle^s$   $ABC$  and  $ACB$ ).



Then we have to prove that

$$AB = PQ$$

$$AC = PR$$

$$\text{and } \angle BAC = \angle QPR.$$

HYPOTHESIS—

Suppose  $AB$  is not equal to  $PQ$ ,  
but that  $AB$  is greater than  $PQ$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

From  $BA$  cut off  $BX$  equal to  $PQ$  ..... I. 3  
Join  $CX$ .



PROOF—

1. In the  $\triangle^s XBC$  and  $PQR$ ,  
 If  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} XB = PQ \dots\dots\dots \text{Hyp. Const.} \\ BC = QR \\ \text{and } \angle XBC = \angle PQR \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.}$

$\therefore \angle XCB = \angle PRQ \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$

2. But  $\angle PRQ = \angle ACB \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.}$   
 $\therefore \angle XCB = \angle ACB \dots\dots\dots \text{Ax. 1.}$   
 A part = the whole, which is absurd.....Ax. 9.

$\therefore$  the hypothesis that  $AB$  is greater than  $PQ$  is incorrect.

Similarly, we could show that  $AB$  is not less than  $PQ$ ,  
 $\therefore AB$  must =  $PQ$ .

3. In the  $\triangle^s ABC, PQR$ ,  
 $\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} AB = PQ \dots\dots\dots \text{Just proved.} \\ BC = QR \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.} \\ \text{and } \angle ABC = \angle PQR \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.} \end{array} \right.$   
 $\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} AC = PR \\ \text{and } \angle BAC = \angle QPR \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$

which proves Case I. of the Proposition.

## CASE II.

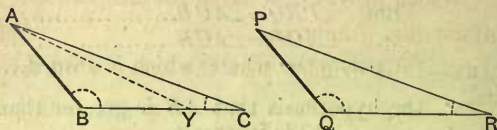
PART. ENUN.—Let the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $PQR$ , have

$$\angle ABC = \angle PQR,$$

$$\angle ACB = \angle PRQ,$$

and side  $AB = \text{side } PQ$ .

( $AB$  being *opposite* to one of the equal angles, viz.,  $ACB$ ).



Then we have to prove that

$$BC = QR,$$

$$AC = PR,$$

$$\angle BAC = \angle QPR.$$

HYPOTHESIS—

Suppose  $BC$  is not equal to  $QR$ ,  
but that  $BC$  is greater than  $QR$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

From  $BC$  cut off  $BY$  equal to  $QR$ .....I. 3.  
Join  $AY$ .

PROOF—

1. In the  $\triangle^s$   $ABY$  and  $PQR$ ,

$$\text{If } \begin{cases} AB = PQ \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.} \\ BY = QR \dots\dots\dots \text{Hyp. Const.} \\ \angle ABY = \angle PQR \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore \angle AYB = \angle PRQ \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$$

2. But  $\angle PRQ = \angle ACB \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.}$

$$\therefore \angle AYB = \angle ACB \dots\dots\dots \text{Ax. 1.}$$

i.e. the ext<sup>r</sup> of the  $\triangle$   $ACY =$  the int<sup>r</sup> opp<sup>te</sup>  $\angle$ ,

Which is impossible.....I. 16.

$\therefore$  the hypothesis that  $BC$  is gr. than  $QR$  is incorrect.

Similarly we could show that  $BC$  is not less than  $QR$ .

$$\therefore BC \text{ must} = QR.$$

3. In the  $\triangle^s ABC, PQR$ ,  
 $\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} AB = PQ \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.} \\ BC = QR \dots\dots\dots \text{Just proved.} \\ \angle ABC = \angle PQR \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.} \end{array} \right.$   
 $\therefore \left. \begin{array}{l} AC = PR \\ \text{and } \angle BAC = \angle QPR \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$

Which proves Case II. of the Proposition.

WHEREFORE, *if two triangles, etc.*

Q.E.D.

COROLLARY—It is evident that the areas of the triangles are equal.

#### NOTES.

In learning this Proposition, notice that in Case I.  $BC$  is given equal to  $QR$ , and  $AB$  supposed unequal to  $PQ$ ; in Case II.  $AB$  is given equal to  $PQ$ , and  $BC$  supposed unequal to  $QR$ . Also, parts 1 and 3 of the proof are similar in both cases, Prop. IV. being applied first to the hypothetical triangle and the triangle  $PQR$ , and then to the two original triangles. In part 2 of the proof, Case I. uses Ax. 9, and Case II. uses I. 16.

Props. IV., VIII., and XXVI. prove the equality of two triangles in all respects, when *three* of their elements are known to be equal, viz. :—

Prop. IV. When two sides and the included angle are given.

Prop. VIII. When three sides are given.

Prop. XXVI. When two angles and one side are given.

In the other cases, viz. :—

When two sides and an angle (not the included one) are given,  
 or, When three angles are given,

The triangles are not *necessarily* equal, in all respects.

See Appendix XXI.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Case I. of Prop. XXVI. is the converse of Prop. IV. Show this, putting your answer in a similar form to that given in the Notes on Props. VIII. and XIV.

2. What is the converse of Case II. ? Is it true ?

3. Write down all the ways in which you can take three of the seven parts of a triangle ; and opposite to each set, in another column, write the remaining four parts.

4. In which of the above cases, when the *three* parts are given equal in two triangles, do we know that the remaining four parts will also be equal in both triangles ?

5. If from the vertex of an isosceles triangle a straight line be drawn perpendicular to the base, prove that it bisects the base.

6. In Case II., in what other position might the dotted line be drawn ? Would this make any difference to the proof ?

## PROPOSITION XXVI. THEOREM. (Second Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—*If two triangles have*

*Two angles of the one equal to two angles of the other, each to each, and one side equal to one side, viz.,  
either (1) the side adjacent to the equal angles,  
or (2) a side opposite to an equal angle, in each ;*

*THEN the remaining sides shall be equal, each to each,  
and the third angle of the one triangle shall be equal to  
the third angle of the other.*

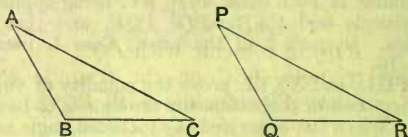
PART. ENUN.—Let the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $PQR$  have

$$\angle ABC = \angle PQR,$$

$$\angle ACB = \angle PRQ,$$

and side  $BC =$  side  $QR$ .

( $BC$  being adjacent to the  $\angle^s$   $ABC$  and  $ACB$ ).



We have to prove that  $AB = PQ$ ,  
 $AC = PR$ ,  
and  $\angle BAC = \angle QPR$ .

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore BC = QR$  ..... Given.

$\therefore BC$  can coincide with  $QR$ .

Put the triangle  $ABC$  on the triangle  $PQR$   
so that the base  $BC$  coincides with  $QR$ .

2.  $\therefore \left. \begin{array}{l} \angle ABC = \angle PQR \\ \text{and } \angle ACB = \angle PRQ \end{array} \right\}$  ..... Given.

$\therefore AB$  will lie on  $PQ$ , and  $AC$  will lie on  $PR$ .

$\therefore$  the point  $A$  will fall on the point  $P$ .

3. Hence the  $\triangle ABC$  coincides with the  $\triangle PQR$ .

$\therefore \left. \begin{array}{l} AB = PQ, \\ AC = PR, \\ \text{and } \angle BAC = \angle QPR \end{array} \right\}$  ..... Ax. 8.

Which proves Case I.



CASE II.

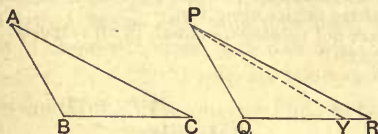
PART. ENUN.—Let the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $PQR$ , have

$$\angle ABC = \angle PQR,$$

$$\angle ACB = \angle PRQ,$$

and side  $AB =$  side  $PQ$ .

( $AB$  being opposite to one of the equal angles, viz.,  $ACB$ ).



We have to prove that  $BC = QR$ ,  
 $AC = PR$ ,  
 $\angle BAC = \angle QPR$ .

PROOF—1.  $\therefore AB = PQ$ .....Given.

$\therefore AB$  can coincide with  $PQ$ .

Put the triangle  $ABC$  on the triangle  $PQR$ ,  
 so that  $AB$  coincides with  $PQ$ .

2.  $\therefore \angle ABC = \angle PQR$ .....Given.

$\therefore BC$  will lie on  $QR$ .

3. Now, if the pt.  $C$  does not lie on the pt.  $R$ , it will  
 have some other position along  $QR$ , such as  $Y$ ,  
 and  $AC$  will lie in the position  $PY$ ,  
 and the  $\angle ACB$  in the position  $PYQ$ .

4. But  $\angle PYQ = \angle PRQ$ .....Given.

i.e., the ext<sup>r</sup>  $\angle$  of the  $\triangle PYR$  = the intr<sup>r</sup> opp<sup>te</sup>  $\angle$ .

Which is impossible.....I. 16.

$\therefore BC$  must coincide with  $QR$ , and  $AC$  with  $PR$ .

$$\therefore \left. \begin{array}{l} BC = QR \\ AC = PR \\ \text{and } \angle BAC = \angle QPR \end{array} \right\} \text{.....Ax. 8.}$$

Which proves Case II.

WHEREFORE, if two triangles, etc.

Q.E.D.

COROLLARY—The areas of the triangles are also equal.

## NOTES.

Props. IV., VIII., and XXVI. prove the equality of two triangles in all respects, when *three* of their elements are known to be equal, viz. :—

Prop. IV. When two sides and the included angle are given.

Prop. VIII. When three sides are given.

Prop. XXVI. When two angles and one side are given.

In the other cases, viz. :—

When two sides and an angle (not the included one) are given,

or, When three angles are given,

The triangles are not *necessarily* equal, in all respects.

See Appendix xxi.

## EXERCISES.

1. Case I. of Prop. XXVI. is the converse of Prop. IV. Show this, putting your answer in a similar form to that given in the Notes on Props. VIII. and XIV.

2. What is the converse of Case II. ? Is it true ?

3. Write down all the ways in which you can take three of the seven parts of a triangle ; and opposite to each set, in another column, write the remaining four parts.

4. In which of the above cases, when the *three* parts are given equal in two triangles, do we know that the remaining four parts will also be equal in both triangles ?

5. If from the vertex of an isosceles triangle a straight line be drawn perpendicular to the base, prove that it bisects the base.

6. In Case II., in what other position might the dotted line be drawn ? Would this make any difference to the proof ?

END OF FIRST PART OF BOOK I.

## NOTES ON THE SECOND PART OF BOOK I.

The First Part of Book I., which is about straight lines, angles, and triangles, closes with Prop. XXVI. The remaining Propositions in this Book deal with parallels, parallelograms, and areas. Before commencing this part it is necessary to understand the names which are applied to certain angles, which are formed when one straight line cuts two other straight lines. These two lines may either be parallel or not.

Let the straight line  $EGHF$  cut (or "fall on") the straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  (parallel in Fig. 1, and not parallel in Fig. 2).

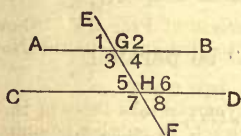


FIG. 1.

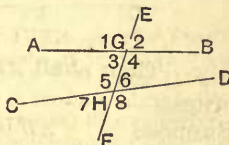


FIG. 2.

We now have 8 angles formed, and for shortness and clearness will number them, and call them by number instead of by letters, *i.e.* the angle  $EGA$  is the angle 1, etc.

1. The angles 1, 2, 7, 8 are called *exterior* angles, because they lie *outside* the lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ .
2. The angles 3, 4, 5, 6 are called *interior* angles, because they lie *between* the lines.
3. The angles 3 and 6 are called *alternate* to each other, *i.e.*, if we consider the angle 3, then 6 is the *alternate* angle.
4. If we take the exterior angle 2, then the angle 6 is said to be the *interior and opposite angle on the same side of the line (EF)*.
5. The angles 4 and 6 are called the *two interior angles on the same side of the line*.

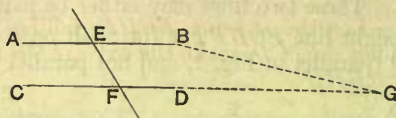
## EXERCISES.

1. What do we call the angles (i.)  $AGH$ , (ii.)  $FHD$ , (iii.)  $CHG$ , (iv.)  $AGE$ , respectively?
2. Which are the two interior angles on the left-hand side of the line?
3. If  $CHF$  be an exterior angle, which is "the interior and opposite on the same side of the line"?
4. Which angle is alternate to  $CHG$ ?
5. What does Ax. 12 tell you about the above figures?

## PROPOSITION XXVII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line falling on two other straight lines make the alternate angles equal to each other, these two straight lines shall be parallel.

PART. ENUN.—Let the straight line  $EF$ , falling on the two st. lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , make the alt<sup>ae</sup>  $\angle^s$   $AEF$  and  $EFD$  equal;



Then shall  $AB$  and  $CD$  be parallel.

HYPOTHESIS—

Suppose  $AB$  is not  $\parallel$  to  $CD$ ,  
Then they will meet, either towards  $B$  and  $D$ , or  
towards  $A$  and  $C$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Let them be produced towards  $B$ ,  $D$ , and meet in  $G$ .

PROOF—

If  $EBG$  and  $FDG$  are straight lines .....Hyp.  
 $\therefore EGF$  is a  $\triangle$ , with its side  $GE$  produced to  $A$ ,  
 $\therefore$  the ext<sup>r</sup>  $\angle AEF$  is greater than the  $\angle EFG$  .....I. 16.  
 But the  $\angle AEF$  is also equal to the  $\angle EFG$  .....Given.  
 Which is absurd.  
 $\therefore AB$  and  $CD$  do not meet towards  $B$  and  $D$ .

Similarly we could show that they do not meet  
towards  $A$  and  $C$ .

$\therefore$  they are parallel.....Def. 35.

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

## EXERCISES.

1. Prove the Proposition, when the other pair of alternate angles are given equal.
2. In the figure of Prop. XVI., prove that  $FK$  is parallel to  $DE$ .
3. What is always the first step in the method of proof used for this Proposition?

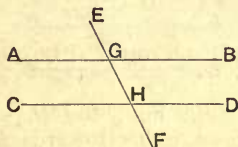


## PROPOSITION XXVIII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line falling on two other straight lines make (1) the exterior angle equal to the interior and opposite angle on the same side of the line; or (2) make the two interior angles on the same side together equal to two right angles; Then these two straight lines shall be parallel.

## PART I.

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $EGHF$ , falling on the two straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , make the ext<sup>r</sup>  $\angle EGB$  equal to the int<sup>r</sup> opp<sup>ts</sup>  $\angle GHD$ ;



Then shall  $AB$  be parallel to  $CD$ .

PROOF—  
 $\therefore \angle EGB = \angle GHD$  ..... Given.  
 and  $\angle EGB = \angle AGH$  ..... I. 15.  
 $\therefore \angle AGH = \angle GHD$  ..... Ax. 1.  
 And these are alternate angles,  
 $\therefore AB$  is parallel to  $CD$  ..... I. 27.

## PART II.

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $EF$ , falling on  $AB$  and  $CD$ , make the two int<sup>r</sup>  $\angle^s$   $BGH$ ,  $GHD =$  two right angles;

Then shall  $AB$  be parallel to  $CD$ .

PROOF—  
 $\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $BGH$  and  $GHD =$  two rt.  $\angle^s$  ..... Given.  
 and the  $\angle^s$   $BGH$  and  $AGH =$  two rt.  $\angle^s$  ..... I. 13.  
 $\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $BGH$  and  $GHD =$  the  $\angle^s$   $BGH$  and  $AGH$  ... Ax. 1, 11.  
 Take away the common angle  $BGH$ ,  
 $\therefore \angle AGH = \angle GHD$  ..... Ax. 3.  
 And these are alternate angles,  
 $\therefore AB$  is parallel to  $CD$  ..... I. 27.

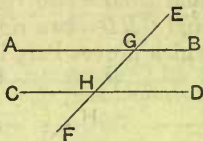
WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

## PROPOSITION XXIX. THEOREM. (First Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line fall on two parallel straight lines it makes (1) the alternate angles equal to one another ;  
 (2) the exterior angle equal to the interior and opposite angle on the same side ;  
 (3) and also the two interior angles on the same side together equal to two right angles.

PART. ENUN.—Let  $AB$  and  $CD$  be parallel, with  $EGHF$  falling on them ;



Then shall

- (1)  $\angle AGH = \text{alt}^e \angle GHD$ .
- (2) the extr  $\angle EGB = \text{intr oppte} \angle GHD$ .
- (3) the intr  $\angle^s BGH$  and  $GHD = \text{two right angles}$ .

## PART I.

HYPOTHESIS—

Suppose  $\angle AGH$  does not equal  $\angle GHD$ ,  
 but that  $\angle AGH$  is greater than  $\angle GHD$ .

PROOF—

Add to each the  $\angle BGH$ ,

Then the  $\angle^s AGH, BGH$  are gr. than  $\angle^s BGH, GHD$ ..Ax. 4.

But  $\angle^s AGH$  and  $BGH = \text{two rt. } \angle^s$ .....I. 13.

$\therefore \angle^s BGH$  and  $GHD$  are less than two rt.  $\angle^s$ .

$\therefore AB$  and  $CD$  will meet towards  $B$  and  $D$ .....Ax. 12.

But they are  $\parallel$ , and cannot meet.....Given.

$\therefore$  the supposition that  $\angle AGH$  is not equal to the  
 $\angle GHD$  is erroneous.

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AGH = \angle GHD$ .

Which proves Part I.

## PART II.

$\therefore \angle AGH = \angle GHD$ .....Just proved.

and  $\angle AGH = \angle EGB$ .....I. 15.

$\therefore \angle EGB = \angle GHD$ .....Ax. 1.

Which proves Part II.

## PART III.

$\therefore \angle EGB = \angle GHD$ .....Just proved.

Add to each the  $\angle BGH$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s EGB$  and  $BGH =$  the  $\angle^s BGH$  and  $GHD$ ...Ax. 2.

But the  $\angle^s EGB$  and  $BGH =$  two right angles.....I. 13.

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s BGH$  and  $GHD =$  two right angles.....Ax. 1.

Which proves Part III.

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

## NOTE.

This is the Proposition for which Euclid invented Axiom 12. The proof of it is regarded as "the great difficulty of Elementary Geometry."

Axiom 12 is not really a "self-evident truth," or "Common Notion," though we have seen that it much more nearly becomes so when regarded as the converse of Prop. XVII.

The method of proof by Playfair's Axiom is given on the next page.

## EXERCISES ON PROP. XXVIII.

1. Prove the Proposition, with different angles to those given here, e.g. the angles  $CHF$  and  $AGH$  for Part I.

2. How many different pairs of angles might be given for Part I.? How many for Part II.?

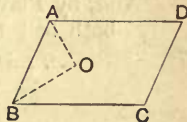
3. When are two straight lines parallel?

## EXERCISES ON PROP. XXIX.

1. Of what Propositions is this the converse? Show the truth of your answer by stating in each case what is given, and what is to be proved.

2. Prove that the diagonal of a parallelogram makes equal angles with opposite sides.

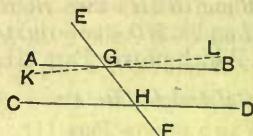
3.  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram, and  $AO$ ,  $BO$  the bisectors of the angles  $DAB$ ,  $ABC$ , respectively. Prove, by this Proposition, that the angles  $OAB$ ,  $OBA$  are together equal to a right angle.



## PROPOSITION XXIX. THEOREM. (Second Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line fall on two parallel straight lines it (1) makes the alternate angles equal to one another;  
 (2) the exterior angle equal to the interior and opposite angle on the same side;  
 (3) and also, the two interior angles on the same side together equal to two right angles.

PART. ENUN.—Let  $AB$  and  $CD$  be parallel, with  $EGHF$  falling on them;



Then shall

- (1)  $\angle AGH = \text{alt}^e \angle GHD$ ,
- (2) the extr  $\angle EGB = \text{intr opp}^e \angle GHD$ ,
- (3) the intr  $\angle^s BGH$  and  $GHD = \text{two rt. angles}$ .

HYPOTHESIS—

Suppose  $\angle AGH$  does not equal  $\angle GHD$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

At the pt.  $G$  in  $GH$  make the  $\angle KGH = \angle GHD$ .....I. 23.  
 Produce  $KG$  to  $L$ .

## PART I.

PROOF— If  $\angle KGH = \text{alt}^e \angle GHD$ .....Hyp. Const.  
 $\therefore KL$  is  $\parallel$  to  $CD$ .....I. 27.  
 But  $AB$  is  $\parallel$  to  $CD$ .....Given.

And, by Playfair's axiom,  $AB$  and  $KL$  cannot both be  $\parallel$  to  $CD$  .....I. 17. Note.

$\therefore \angle AGH$  is not unequal to  $\angle GHD$ ,

i.e.,  $\angle AGH$  is equal to  $\angle GHD$ .

Which proves Part. I.



PART II.

$\therefore \angle AGH = \angle GHD$  ..... Just proved.  
 and  $\angle AGH = \angle EGB$  ..... I. 15.  
 $\therefore \angle EGB = \angle GHD$  ..... Ax. 1.  
 Which proves Part II.

PART III.

$\therefore \angle EGB = \angle GHD$  ..... Just proved.  
 Adding to each the  $\angle BGH$ ,  
 $\therefore$  the  $\angle$   $EGB$  and  $BGH =$  the  $\angle$   $BGH$  and  $GHD$  ... Ax. 2.  
 But the  $\angle$   $EGB$  and  $BGH =$  two right angles ..... I. 13.  
 $\therefore$  the  $\angle$   $BGH$  and  $GHD =$  two right angles ... Ax. 1.  
 Which proves Part III.

WHEREFORE, *if a straight line, etc.*

Q.E.D.

NOTE.

For Playfair's Axiom, see page 55.

EXERCISES.

1. Of what Propositions is this the converse? Show the truth of your answer by stating in each case what is given, and what is to be proved.

2. Prove that the diagonal of a parallelogram makes equal angles with opposite sides.

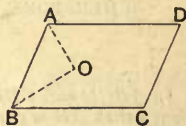
3.  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram, and  $AO$ ,  $BO$  the bisectors of the angles  $DAB$ ,  $ABC$ , respectively. Prove, by this Proposition, that the angles  $OAB$ ,  $OBA$  are together equal to a right angle.

4. Prove that the angle  $CHG$  is equal to the angle  $HGB$ .

5. Prove that all the angles of a parallelogram are together equal to four right angles.

6. Prove that the angle  $AGE$  is equal to the angle  $FHD$ .

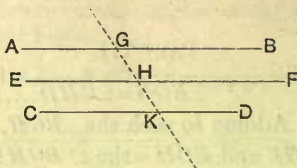
7. Prove that the angles  $EGB$  and  $FHD$  are together equal to two right angles.



## PROPOSITION XXX. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*Straight lines which are parallel to the same straight line are parallel to each other.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be each parallel to  $EF$ ;



Then shall  $AB$  be parallel to  $CD$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Draw a straight line  $GHK$ , cutting  $AB$ ,  $EF$ ,  $CD$ , in  $G$ ,  $H$ ,  $K$ , respectively.

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore AB$  is  $\parallel$  to  $EF$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore \angle AGH = \text{alt}^e \angle GHF$ .....I. 29.
2.  $\therefore EF$  is  $\parallel$  to  $CD$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore \text{ext}^r \angle GHF = \text{int}^r \text{opp}^t \angle HKD$ .....I. 29.
3. And  $\angle GHF$  also  $= \angle AGH$  .....Proved above.  
 $\therefore \angle AGH = \angle GKD$  .....Ax. 1.  
 and these are alternate angles,  
 $\therefore AB$  is  $\parallel$  to  $CD$  .....I. 27.

WHEREFORE, *straight lines, etc.*

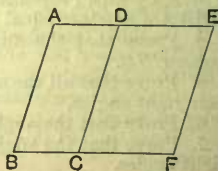
Q.E.D.

## EXERCISES.

1.  $ABCD$  and  $CDEF$  are two parallelograms. Prove that  $AB$  is parallel to  $EF$ .

2. Why is this not sufficient to prove that  $ABFE$  is a parallelogram?

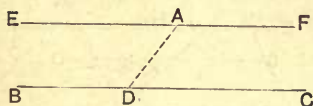
3. Show that when  $EF$  lies between  $AB$  and  $CD$ , as in the figure above, that it can be proved that  $AB$  and  $CD$  cannot meet, by Definition 35 only.



PROPOSITION XXXI. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—*To draw a straight line through a given point parallel to a given straight line.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $A$  be the given point, and  $BC$  the given straight line ;



It is required to draw through  $A$  a st. line  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. In  $BC$  take a point  $D$ , and join  $AD$ .
2. At the pt.  $A$  in the st. line  $AD$ , make an  $\angle EAD$  equal to the  $\angle ADC$ .....I. 23.
3. Produce  $EA$  to  $F$ .

Then shall  $EF$  be parallel to  $BC$ .

PROOF—

$\therefore \angle EAD = \text{alt}^{\text{te}} \angle ADC$ .....Const  
 $\therefore EF$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ .....I. 27.

WHEREFORE, a straight line  $EAF$  has been drawn through  $A$ , parallel to  $BC$ .

Q.E.F.

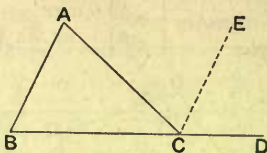
EXERCISES.

1. In Part 2 of the Construction what other angle might be taken instead of  $ADC$ ?
2. Do this Problem without using Prop. XXIII.
3. How does the above construction indicate the correctness of Playfair's Axiom?
4. Draw a triangle, and then make another triangle outside it, whose sides are parallel to those of the first.
5. Show that all the angles of the first triangle are equal to those of the second.

## PROPOSITION XXXII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If a side of any triangle be produced, the exterior angle is equal to the two interior and opposite angles; and the three interior angles of every triangle are equal to two right angles.

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$  with  $BC$  produced to  $D$ ;



Then shall (1) the  $\angle ACD =$  the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $BAC$ .

(2) the  $\angle^s ABC, BCA, CAB =$  two right  $\angle^s$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Through  $C$  draw  $CE \parallel$  to  $AB$ .....I. 31.

## PART I.

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore AC$  meets the  $\parallel^s AB, CE$ ,  
 $\therefore \angle ACE = \text{alt}^{\text{te}} \angle BAC$ .....I. 29.
2.  $\therefore BD$  meets the  $\parallel^s AB, CE$ ,  
 $\therefore \text{ext}^r \angle ECD = \text{int}^r \text{opp}^{\text{te}} \angle ABC$ .....I. 29.
3.  $\therefore$  Whole  $\angle ACD = \angle^s ABC$  and  $BAC$ .....Ax. 2.  
 Which proves Part I.

## PART II.

1.  $\therefore \angle ACD = \angle^s ABC$  and  $BAC$ .....Just proved.  
 Add to each the  $\angle BCA$ ,  
 $\therefore \angle^s ACD$  and  $BCA = \angle^s ABC, BAC, BCA$ .....Ax. 2.
2. But the  $\angle^s ACD, BCA =$  two rt.  $\angle^s$ .....I. 13.  
 $\therefore$  also the  $\angle^s ABC, BAC, BCA =$  two rt.  $\angle^s$ .....Ax. 1.  
 Which proves Part II.

WHEREFORE, if a side of a triangle, etc.

Q.E.D.

NOTE.

This Proposition is an extension of the 16th.

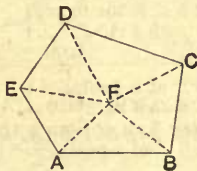


EXERCISES.

1. Prove that in Exercise 3, Prop. XXIX., the angle  $AOB$  is a right angle.
2. What is the size of the angle of an equilateral triangle?
3. In a right-angled isosceles triangle, what is the size of each of the base angles?

COROLLARY I.\*

*All the interior angles of any rectilineal figure, together with four right angles*  $\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{All the interior angles of any} \\ \text{rectilineal figure, together} \\ \text{with four right angles} \end{array}} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Twice as many right angles} \\ \text{as the figure has sides.} \end{array} \right.$



Let  $ABCDE$  be the figure.

CONSTRUCTION—

Take any pt.  $F$  within the figure, and join it to all the angular points.

We now evidently have as many triangles as the figure has sides.

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$  of one  $\triangle = 2$  rt.  $\angle^s$  .....I. 32.  
 $\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$  of all the  $\triangle^s = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Twice as many rt. } \angle^s \\ \text{as there are } \triangle^s, \\ \text{i.e.} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Twice as many rt. } \angle^s \\ \text{as the figure has sides.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$
2. Also,  
the  $\angle^s$  of all the  $\triangle^s \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{make} \\ \text{up} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The } \angle^s \text{ of the figure,} \\ \text{with the } \angle^s \text{ at } F. \end{array} \right.$   
 $\text{i.e.} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The } \angle^s \text{ of the figure,} \\ \text{with 4 rt. } \angle^s \text{....I. 15. Cor. 2.} \end{array} \right.$
3. But,  
the  $\angle^s$  of all the  $\triangle^s \left\{ \begin{array}{l} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Twice as many rt. } \angle^s \text{ as the} \\ \text{figure has sides...Proved in 1.} \end{array} \right. \\ \therefore \text{ the } \angle^s \text{ of the figure with 4 rt. } \angle^s \left\{ \begin{array}{l} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Twice as many rt. } \angle^s \text{ as} \\ \text{the figure has sides..Ax. 1.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$   

Q.E.D.

\* For Alternative Proof see page 103.

## PARTICULAR CASE.

Let the figure have 5 sides,  
Then on joining  $F$  to the angular points, we have 5 triangles.

1.  $\therefore$  The 3  $\angle^s$  of one  $\triangle = 2$  rt.  $\angle^s$  ..... I. 32.  
 $\therefore$  the 15  $\angle^s$  of all the  $\triangle^s = 10$  rt.  $\angle^s$ .
2. Now, the 15  $\angle^s$  of all the  $\triangle^s$   $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{make up} \\ \text{i.e.} = \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The 5 } \angle^s \text{ of the figure,} \\ \text{with the } \angle^s \text{ at } F. \\ \text{The 5 } \angle^s \text{ of the figure,} \\ \text{with 4 rt. } \angle^s. \end{array} \right.$
3. But also, the 15  $\angle^s$  of all the  $\triangle^s = 10$  rt.  $\angle^s$  ..... Proved above.  
 $\therefore$   $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{the 5 } \angle^s \text{ of the figure} \\ \text{with 4 rt. } \angle^s \end{array} \right\} = 10 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$ .

Hence,  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{the 5 } \angle^s \text{ of a pentagon} \\ \text{with 4 rt. } \angle^s \end{array} \right\} = 10 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$ .

Take away 4 rt.  $\angle^s$  from both sides,  
 $\therefore$  the 5  $\angle^s$  of a pentagon  $= 6$  rt.  $\angle^s$ .

So, the 6  $\angle^s$  of a hexagon *with* 4 rt.  $\angle^s = 12$  rt.  $\angle^s$ .  
 $\therefore$  the 6  $\angle^s$  of a hexagon  $= 8$  rt.  $\angle^s$ .

And the 8  $\angle^s$  of an octagon *with* 4 rt.  $\angle^s = 16$  rt.  $\angle^s$ .  
 $\therefore$  the 8  $\angle^s$  of an octagon  $= 12$  rt.  $\angle^s$ .

And so on.

## EXERCISES.

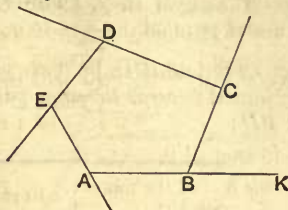
1. Prove that the angles of any quadrilateral figure are together equal to four right angles.
2. What is the size of an angle of a heptagon, all of whose angles are equal?
3. Show the truth of this Corollary for a triangle.
4. Can you have "a five-sided figure which has all its sides equal, and all its angles right angles"? Why?
5. If all the interior angles of a rectilineal figure are equal to sixteen right angles, how many sides has it?

## EXERCISES ON COR. II.

1. Draw the figure, producing  $BA$  in the direction  $B$  to  $A$ .
2. Demonstrate the truth of Cor. II. of Prop. XV., by a practical method similar to that mentioned in the Notes.
3. Show that a similar practical proof may be given of the 1st Corollary of Prop. XXXII. Begin by placing the straight edge along  $AB$ , and turn it so that the straight edge lies along each side in turn, and comes alternately *inside* and *outside* of the figure.
4. Show *practically* that both Corollaries are true for a figure of twelve sides. What is such a figure called?

COROLLARY II.

*All the exterior angles of any rectilineal figure are together equal to four right angles.*



Let  $ABCDE$  be the figure, and  $CBK$  one of the exterior angles.

NOTE—

To each interior angle there is an exterior angle adjacent, and there are as many interior angles as sides.

PROOF—

Now the int<sup>r</sup>  $\angle ABC$ , with its adjac<sup>t</sup> ext<sup>r</sup>  $\angle CBK$   
 $=$  two right  $\angle^s$  ..... I. 13.

Hence, all the int<sup>r</sup>  $\angle^s$  } = { Twice as many rt.  $\angle^s$   
 with the ext<sup>r</sup>  $\angle^s$  } = { as the figure has sides.  
 $=$  { all the interior  $\angle^s$   
 with 4 rt.  $\angle^s$  ..... Cor. I.

Take away the int<sup>r</sup>  $\angle^s$  from both sides.

$\therefore$  the exterior  $\angle^s = 4$  rt.  $\angle^s$  ..... Ax. 3.

Q.E.D.

NOTES.

The sides of the figure must be produced in the same direction of rotation; i.e. if  $AB$  be produced in the direction  $A$  to  $B$ , we must produce  $BC$  in the direction  $B$  to  $C$ ,  $CD$  in the direction  $C$  to  $D$ , and so on, going round the figure always in the same direction.

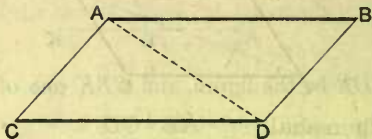
A practical demonstration of this Corollary may be shown, by laying a "straight edge" along one of the sides of the figure, and outside the figure, and then turning it round so as to coincide with each side in turn. When it comes back to the original side it will be found to have turned completely round, i.e. to have passed through *four right angles*.

From this we see that if a man walks completely round a piece of ground with any number of sides, he will have turned right round once, and have faced, in turn, all the Four Cardinal Points of the Compass. At each corner he deviates from his former path, by an angle, or "turn," which is an exterior angle of the figure.

## PROPOSITION XXXIII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*The straight lines which join the extremities of two equal and parallel straight lines, towards the same parts, are themselves equal and parallel.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $AB$  and  $CD$  be two equal and parallel straight lines, joined *towards the same parts* by the straight lines  $AC$  and  $BD$ ;



Then shall (1)  $AC$  be equal to  $BD$ ,  
(2)  $AC$  be parallel to  $BD$ .

CONSTRUCTION— Join  $AD$ .

PROOF—  $\therefore AB$  is  $\parallel$  to  $CD$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore \angle BAD = \text{alt}^{\text{to}} \angle ADC$ .....I. 29.

In the  $\triangle^s BAD$  and  $CDA$

$\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} BA = CD \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.} \\ AD = DA \dots\dots\dots \text{Common.} \\ \text{and } \angle BAD = \angle CDA \dots\dots\dots \text{Proved above.} \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore \left. \begin{array}{l} AC = BD \\ \text{and } \angle ADB = \angle DAC \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$

And these are alternate  $\angle^s$ ,

$\therefore AC$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BD$ .....I. 27.

And we proved  $AC = BD$ .

WHEREFORE, *the straight lines, etc.*

Q.E.D.

## EXERCISES.

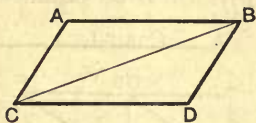
1. What is meant by “towards the same parts”? Draw two equal and parallel straight lines, and join their ends *not towards the same parts*.
2. Of what kind does this Proposition prove the figure  $ABCD$  to be?
3. What is the converse of this Proposition?



PROPOSITION XXXIV. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*The opposite sides and angles of a parallelogram are equal to one another, and the diameter bisects the parallelogram, that is, divides it into two equal parts.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ACDB$  be a parallelogram, and  $BC$  a diameter;



Then shall  $AB = CD$   
 $AC = BD$   
 $\angle BAC = \angle BDC$   
 $\angle ABD = \angle ACD$   
 and area  $ABC = \text{area } BCD$ .

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore BC$  meets the  $\parallel^{\text{ls}}$   $AB$  and  $CD$ .....Def. 36.  
 $\therefore \angle ABC = \text{alt}^{\text{te}} \angle BCD$ .....I. 29.  
 $\therefore BC$  meets the  $\parallel^{\text{ls}}$   $AC$  and  $BD$ .....Def. 36.  
 $\therefore \angle DBC = \text{alt}^{\text{te}} \angle BCA$ .....I. 29.  
 $\therefore$  the whole  $\angle ABD = \text{the whole } \angle ACD$ .....Ax. 2.  
*Which proves one pair of opposite  $\angle^{\text{s}}$  equal.*

2. In the  $\triangle$ s  $ABC$  and  $BCD$ ,  
 $\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle ABC = \angle BCD \\ \angle ACB = \angle CBD \end{array} \right\}$  .....Just proved.  
 and  $BC$  is common.  
 $\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} AB = CD \\ AC = BD \\ \angle BAC = \angle BDC \end{array} \right\}$  .....I. 26.  
 and area  $ABC = \text{area } BCD$ .....I. 26. Cor.

WHEREFORE, *the opposite sides, etc.*

EXERCISES.

1. Prove this Proposition by joining  $AD$ .
2. Prove that the triangle  $ABC$  is equal to the triangle  $ACD$  in area.

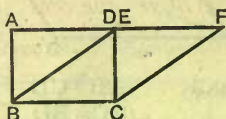
## PROPOSITION XXXV. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*Parallelograms on the same base, and between the same parallels, are equiareal to each other.*

PART. ENUN.—Let the  $\square^{\text{gram}} ABCD$ ,  $EBCF$  be on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same  $\parallel^{\text{ls}}$   $AF$ , and  $BC$ ;

Then shall  $\square^{\text{gram}} ABCD$  be equiareal to  $\square^{\text{gram}} EBCF$ .

## CASE I.



Where the points  $D$  and  $E$  coincide.

PROOF—

$\therefore \square^{\text{gram}} ABCD$  is double of the  $\triangle DBC$  }  
 and  $\square^{\text{gram}} EBCF$  is also double of the  $\triangle DBC$  } .....I. 34.  
 $\therefore$  the  $\square^{\text{gram}} ABCD = \square^{\text{gram}} EBCF$  .....Ax. 6.

## CASE II.

Where the points  $D$  and  $E$  do not coincide.

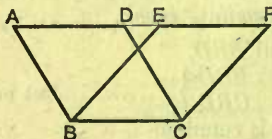


FIG. 1.

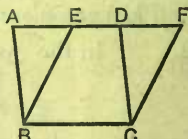


FIG. 2.

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore ABCD$  is a parallelogram,  
 $\therefore AD = BC$  .....I. 34.  
 Similarly  $EF = BC$ ,  
 $\therefore AD = EF$  .....Ax. 1.

Now add  $DE$  (Fig. 1), or take away  $DE$  (Fig. 2).

$\therefore \begin{cases} \text{the whole } AE = \text{the whole } DF \text{ (Fig. 1)} \dots\dots\dots \text{Ax. 2.} \\ \text{or, the rem}^{\text{dr}} AE = \text{the rem}^{\text{dr}} DF \text{ (Fig. 2)} \dots\dots\dots \text{Ax. 3.} \end{cases}$

2. Now, in the  $\triangle^s EAB, FDC$
- $$\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} EA = FD \dots\dots\dots \text{Just proved.} \\ AB = DC \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 34.} \\ \text{and } \angle EAB = \angle FDC \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 29.} \end{array} \right.$$
- $\therefore \triangle EAB = \triangle FDC \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$
3. Take the  $\triangle FDC$  from the trapezium  $ABCF$ ,  
and we have left the  $\square^{\text{gram}} ABCD$ .  
Take the  $\triangle EAB$  from the same trapezium,  
and we have left the  $\square^{\text{gram}} EBCF$ .  
 $\therefore$  the  $\text{rem}^{\text{dr}} ABCD = \text{the rem}^{\text{dr}} EBCF \dots\dots\dots \text{Ax. 3.}$

WHEREFORE, *parallelograms on the same base, etc.*

Q.E.D.

#### NOTES.

The Enunciation of this Proposition is usually given thus:—

*“Parallelograms on the same base and between the same parallels, are equal to each other.”*

As this use of the word “equal” is sometimes confusing to beginners, who often take it to imply “equal in all respects”; the word “equiareal” has been introduced to point out that the parallelograms are to be regarded as equal in *area* only. The same symbol is used as for “is equal to.”

A similar remark applies to the succeeding Propositions.

If from a point in one of the parallels  $AF, BC$  a perpendicular be drawn to the other, the length of this line is called the **altitude** of the parallelograms.

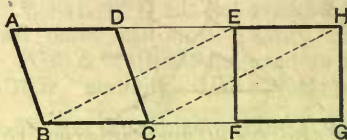
#### EXERCISES.

1. In what special way is Axiom 3 used at the end of this Proposition?
2. Draw the figure of Case I., and cut it up into pieces, so as to show by laying the pieces on one another that the parallelograms are equiareal.
3. In the same figure prove that if  $ABCD$  is a square,  $EBCF$  cannot be a rhombus. What is it? (Use I. 19.)
4. What relation does the figure of Case I. bear to the figures in Case II?
5. Prove the Proposition without using I. 4.
6. Prove that parallelograms of equal altitude, on the same base, and on the same side of it, are equiareal.

## PROPOSITION XXXVI. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*Parallelograms on equal bases, and between the same parallels, are equiareal to one another.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABCD$ , and  $EFGH$  be  $\square^{\text{gram}}$ s on equal bases  $BC$ , and  $FG$ , and between the same  $\parallel^{\text{ls}}$   $AH$  and  $BG$ ;



Then shall  $\square^{\text{gram}} ABCD$  be equiareal to  $\square^{\text{gram}} EFGH$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Join  $BE$ , and  $CH$ .

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore BC = FG$ .....Given.  
 And  $FG = EH$ .....I. 34.  
 $\therefore BC = EH$ .....Ax. 1.

And  $\therefore BC$  and  $EH$  are equal and parallel,  
 $\therefore BE$ , and  $CH$  which join them, are parallel.....I. 33.  
 $\therefore EBCH$  is a  $\square^{\text{gram}}$ .....Def. 36.

2.  $\therefore EBCH$ , and  $ABCD$  are on the same base  
 $BC$ , and between the same  $\parallel^{\text{ls}}$   $AH$  and  $BC$ ...Given.  
 $\therefore \square^{\text{gram}} EBCH = \square^{\text{gram}} ABCD$ .....I. 35.

And  $\therefore EBCH$ , and  $EFGH$  are on the same  
 base  $EH$ , and between the same  $\parallel^{\text{ls}}$   $EH$ ,  $BG$ ....Given.  
 $\therefore \square^{\text{gram}} EBCH = \square^{\text{gram}} EFGH$ .....I. 35.

Hence,  $\square^{\text{gram}} ABCD = \square^{\text{gram}} EFGH$ .....Ax. 1.

WHEREFORE, *parallelograms on equal bases, etc.*

Q.E.D.

## EXERCISES.

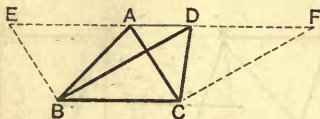
1. What is the first fact that it is necessary to prove in this Proposition, and why?
2. What is the converse of this Proposition?



PROPOSITION XXXVII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*Triangles on the same base and between the same parallels, are equiareal to one another.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$ , and  $DBC$  be  $\triangle^s$  on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same  $\parallel^s$   $AD$  and  $BC$ ;



Then shall the  $\triangle ABC$  be equiareal to the  $\triangle DBC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. Produce  $AD$  both ways to  $E$  and  $F$ .
  2. Through  $B$  draw  $BE \parallel^s$  to  $AC$  }
  3. Through  $C$  draw  $CF \parallel^s$  to  $BD$  } .....I. 31.
- Then  $EBCA$  and  $DBCF$  are  $\square^{grams}$  .....Def. 36.

PROOF—

- $\therefore$  the  $\square^{grams}$   $EC^*$  and  $BF$  are on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same  $\parallel^s$   $BC$  and  $EF$ .....Given.
- $\therefore \square^{gram} EC = \square^{gram} BF$  .....I. 35.
- But  $\triangle ABC$  is half the  $\square^{gram} EC$  }
- And  $\triangle DBC$  is half the  $\square^{gram} BF$  } .....I. 34.
- $\therefore \triangle ABC = \triangle DBC$  .....Ax. 7.

WHEREFORE, *triangles on the same base, etc.*

Q.E.D.

NOTE.

If a straight line be drawn from the vertex of a triangle perpendicular to the base, or the base produced, the length of it is called the **Altitude** of the triangle.

EXERCISES.

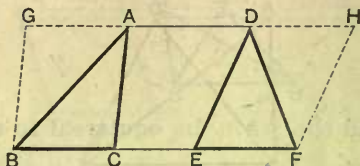
1. Prove the Proposition by drawing a straight line through  $B$  parallel to  $CD$ , and through  $C$  parallel to  $BA$ .
2. Can the two triangles be equal in all respects? Does I. 7 forbid this?
3. Prove that triangles of equal altitude, on the same base, are equiareal.

\* A parallelogram is sometimes referred to by the letters standing at two opposite angles. Thus  $AEBC$  is called the parallelogram  $EC$ , or  $AB$ .

## PROPOSITION XXXVIII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*Triangles on equal bases and between the same parallels are equiareal to each other.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  be  $\triangle^s$  on equal bases  $BC$  and  $EF$ , and between the same  $\parallel^s$   $AD$  and  $BF$ ;



Then shall  $\triangle ABC$  be equiareal to  $\triangle DEF$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. Produce  $AD$  both ways to  $G$  and  $H$ .
2. Through  $B$  draw  $BG \parallel$  to  $CA$  }
3. Through  $F$  draw  $FH \parallel$  to  $ED$  } .....I. 31.

Then  $GBCA$  and  $DEFH$  are  $\square^{\text{grams}}$  .....Def. 36.

PROOF—

$\therefore$  the  $\square^{\text{grams}}$   $GC$  and  $DF$  are on equal bases,  
 $BC, EF$ , and between the same  $\parallel^s$   $GH$  and  $BF$ ...Given  
 $\therefore \square^{\text{gram}} GC = \square^{\text{gram}} DF$  .....I. 36.

But  $\triangle ABC$  is half  $\square^{\text{gram}} GC$  }  
 And  $\triangle DEF$  is half  $\square^{\text{gram}} DF$  } .....I. 34.  
 $\therefore \triangle ABC = \triangle DEF$  .....Ax. 7.

WHEREFORE, *triangles on equal bases, etc.*

Q.E.D.

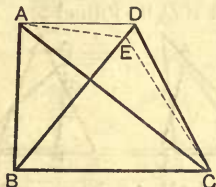
## EXERCISES.

1. In what other way might the parallel lines be drawn in the Construction?
2. Prove that the triangle  $DFH =$  the triangle  $ABC$ .
3.  $AB$  is a straight line, bisected at  $C$ . Take any point  $D$ , outside the line, and join it to  $A, B, C$ . Prove that the triangle  $DAC$  is equal to the triangle  $DBC$ .
4. In this Proposition, must the bases of the triangles be in the same straight line

PROPOSITION XXXIX. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*Equiareal triangles on the same base, and on the same side of it, are between the same parallels.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$  and  $DBC$  be equiareal  $\triangle^s$  on the same base  $BC$ , and let  $AD$  be joined;



Then shall  $AD$  be parallel to  $BC$ .

HYPOTHESIS—

Suppose  $AD$  is not  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. Through  $A$  draw  $AE \parallel$  to  $BC$ , meeting  $BD$  in  $E$ ...I. 31.
2. Join  $CE$ .

PROOF—

If  $\triangle^s ABC, EBC$ , are on the same base  $BC$ ,  
 and between the same  $\parallel^s AE, BC$ .....Hyp.  
 $\therefore \triangle ABC = \triangle EBC$ .....I. 37.  
 But  $\triangle ABC = \triangle DBC$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore \triangle EBC = \triangle DBC$ .....Ax. 1.  
 A part = the whole, which is absurd..Ax. 9.  
 $\therefore AE$  is not  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ .

And in the same way we could show that no  
 other line through  $A$ , but  $AD$ , is  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ ,  
 $\therefore AD$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ .

WHEREFORE, *equiareal triangles, etc.*

Q.E.D.

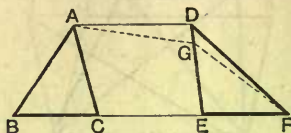
EXERCISES.

1. Which Proposition is the converse of this?
2. Prove the Proposition, supposing  $AE$  lies above instead of below  $AD$ .
3. Why are the words in the Enunciation “on the same side of it,” necessary?

## PROPOSITION XL. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*Equiareal triangles, on equal bases in the same straight line, and on the same side of it, are between the same parallels.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC, DEF$  be equiareal  $\triangle$ 's on equal bases  $BC, EF$ , in the same straight line  $BF$ , and on the same side of it, and let  $AD$  be joined;



Then shall  $AD$  be parallel to  $BF$ .

HYPOTHESIS—Suppose  $AD$  is not  $\parallel$  to  $BF$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. Through  $A$  draw  $AG \parallel$  to  $BF$ , meeting  $DE$  in  $G$ ...I. 31.
2. Join  $FG$ .

PROOF—If  $ABC$  and  $GEF$  are on equal bases  $BC, EF$ ,  
 and between the same  $\parallel$ 's  $AG, BF$ .....Hyp.  
 $\therefore \triangle ABC = \triangle GEF$ .....I. 38.  
 But  $\triangle ABC = \triangle DEF$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore \triangle GEF = \triangle DEF$ .....Ax. 1.  
 A part = the whole, which is absurd.....Ax. 9.  
 $\therefore AG$  is not parallel to  $BF$ .

In the same way we can show that no other line  
 through  $A$  but  $AD$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BF$ .

$\therefore AD$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BF$ .

WHEREFORE, *equiareal triangles, etc.*

Q.E.D.

## EXERCISES.

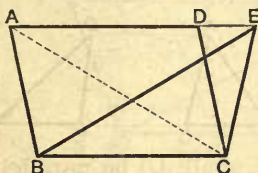
1. Prove the Proposition when  $AG$  is drawn above  $AD$  instead of below it.
2. Are equiareal triangles on equal bases in the same straight line always between the same parallels?
3. Use this Proposition to prove that  
 “Equiareal parallelograms on equal bases in the same straight line, and on the same side of it, are between the same parallels.”



PROPOSITION XLI. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If a parallelogram and a triangle be on the same base, and between the same parallels, the parallelogram shall be double of the triangle.

PART. ENUN.—Let the  $\square^{\text{gram}} ABCD$ , and the  $\triangle EBC$  be on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same  $\parallel^{\text{s}}$   $BC, AE$ ;



Then shall  $ABCD$  be double of  $EBC$ .

CONSTRUCTION— Join  $AC$ .

PROOF—

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle^{\text{s}}$   $ABC, EBC$ , are on the same base  $BC$ ,  
and between the same  $\parallel^{\text{s}}$   $AE, BC$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore \triangle ABC = \triangle EBC$ .....I. 37.

But  $\square^{\text{gram}} ABCD$  is double of  $\triangle ABC$ ..... I. 34.  
 $\therefore \square^{\text{gram}} ABCD$  is double of  $\triangle EBC$ .

WHEREFORE, if a parallelogram, etc.

Q.E.D.

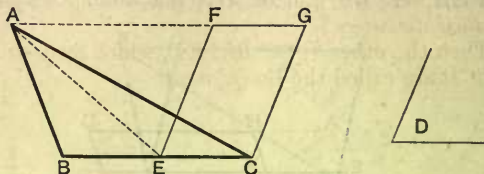
EXERCISES.

1. Draw a rhombus, and make a right-angled triangle half its size.
2. Having done this, make a triangle equal to the rhombus.
3. Show that one triangle which can be thus made equal to the rhombus will be isosceles.
4. If a parallelogram and a triangle are on *equal* bases and between the same parallels, the parallelogram will be double of the triangle.
5. If a parallelogram  $ABCD$  and a triangle  $EBC$  are on the same base  $BC$ , and the parallelogram is double of the triangle, prove that  $E$  will lie in  $AD$ , or  $AD$  produced.
6. What relation does this last exercise bear to Prop. XLI.?
7. Prove the Proposition without joining  $AC$ , by drawing through  $B$  a parallel to  $CE$ .

## PROPOSITION XLII. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—*To describe a parallelogram that shall be equal to a given triangle, and have one of its angles equal to a given rectilineal angle.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$  be the given  $\triangle$ , and  $D$  the given  $\angle$ ;



It is required to make a  $\square^{\text{gram}}$  equal in area to the  $\triangle ABC$ , and having an  $\angle$  equal to  $D$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. Bisect  $BC$  in  $E$ , and join  $AE$ .....I. 10.
2. At the pt.  $E$  in the line  $CE$  make  $\angle CEF = \angle D$ .....I. 23.
3. Through  $A$  draw  $AG \parallel$  to  $BC$ , and through  $C$  draw  $CG \parallel$  to  $EF$ .....I. 31.

Then  $FECG$  is a  $\square^{\text{gram}}$ .....Def. 36.

It shall be the  $\square^{\text{gram}}$  required.

PROOF—

- $\therefore BE = EC$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore \triangle ABE = \triangle AEC$ .....I. 38.  
 $\therefore \triangle ABC$  is double of  $\triangle AEC$ .  
 But also  $\square^{\text{gram}} FC$  is double of  $\triangle AEC$ .. .....I. 41.  
 $\therefore \square^{\text{gram}} FC = \triangle ABC$ .....Ax. 6.  
 and it has an  $\angle FEC = D$ .....Const.

WHEREFORE, a parallelogram has been made, etc.

Q.E.F.

## EXERCISES.

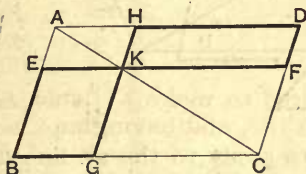
1. Make an oblong equal to a given equilateral triangle.
2. Draw a triangle, and make another double the size of the first.
3. Make a right-angled triangle equal in area to a given rhomboid.

PROPOSITION XLIII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*The complements of the parallelograms which are about the diameter of any parallelogram, are equiareal to one another.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABCD$  be a  $\square^{gram}$ , with diameter  $AC$ ; and  $EH, GF, \square^{grams}$  about  $AC$ ; (i.e., which have parts of  $AC$  for their diameters.)

Then the other  $\square^{grams} BK, KD$ , which complete the figure  $ABCD$  are called the *Complements*.



The comp<sup>t</sup>  $BK$  shall be equiareal to the comp<sup>t</sup>  $KD$ .

PROOF—

$$\begin{aligned} \because BD \text{ is } \square^{gram}, \\ \therefore \triangle ABC &= \triangle ADC \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 34.} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \because EH \text{ is } \square^{gram}, \\ \therefore \triangle AEK &= \triangle AHK \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 34.} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \because GF \text{ is } \square^{gram}, \\ \therefore \triangle KGC &= \triangle KFC \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 34.} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \triangle^s AEK, KGC \text{ tog}^r = \triangle^s AHK, KFC \text{ tog}^r \dots \text{Ax. 2.}$$

Take away the  $\triangle^s AEK, KGC$  from the  $\triangle ABC$   
and we have left the comp<sup>t</sup>  $BK$ .

Take away the  $\triangle^s AHK, KFC$  from the  $\triangle ADC$   
and we have left the comp<sup>t</sup>  $KD$ .

$$\therefore \text{comp}^t BK = \text{comp}^t KD \dots\dots\dots \text{Ax. 3.}$$

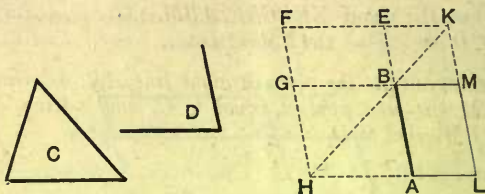
WHEREFORE, *the complements, etc.*

Q.E.D.

## PROPOSITION XLIV. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—To a given straight line to apply a parallelogram, which shall be equal to a given triangle, and have one of its angles equal to a given rectilineal angle.

PART. ENUN.—Let  $AB$  be the given st. line,  $C$  the given triangle, and  $D$  the given angle;



It is required to apply to the st. line  $AB$  a  $\square^{\text{gram}}$  equal to  $\triangle C$ , and having an  $\angle$  equal to  $D$ .

## CONSTRUCTION—

1. Make a  $\square^{\text{gram}} BEFG$  equal to the  $\triangle C$ , and having an  $\angle EBG = \angle D$  ..... I. 42.  
And place it so that  $BE$  may be in the same st. line with  $AB$ .
2. Produce  $FG$  to  $H$ .
3. Through  $A$  draw  $AH \parallel$  to  $BG$  or  $EF$  ..... I. 31.
4. Join  $HB$ .

SUBSIDIARY PROOF.\*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Now, } \because AH \text{ is } \parallel \text{ to } EF \text{ ..... Const.} \\ \therefore \text{ the } \angle^s AHF, HFE = \text{two rt. } \angle^s \text{ ..... I. 29.} \\ \therefore \text{ the } \angle^s BHF, HFE \text{ are less than two rt. } \angle^s. \\ \therefore HB, FE \text{ will meet if produced towards} \\ \quad B \text{ and } E \text{ ..... Ax. 12.} \end{array} \right.$

5. Produce  $HB, FE$  to meet in  $K$ .
6. Through  $K$  draw  $KL \parallel$  to  $EA$  or  $FH$  ..... I. 31.
7. Produce  $GB, HA$  to meet  $KL$  in  $M$  and  $L$ .

Then shall  $ALMB$  be the  $\square^{\text{gram}}$  required.



PROOF—

1.  $\therefore HLKE$  is a  $\square^{gram}$  with  $HK$  as diam<sup>r</sup>, and  
 $LB, BF$  are the complements of  $AG$ ,  
 $ME$  (the  $\square^{grams}$  about the diameter),  
 $\therefore \text{comp}^t LB = \text{comp}^t BF$  ..... I. 43.  
     But  $BF = \triangle C$  ..... Const.  
 $\therefore LB = \triangle C$  ..... Ax. 1.
2. And  $\therefore \angle EBG = \angle D$  ..... Const.  
     and  $\angle EBG = \angle ABM$  ..... I. 15.  
 $\therefore \angle ABM = \angle D$  ..... Ax. 1.

WHEREFORE, to the given straight line  $AB$ , a parallelogram  $AM$  has been applied, equal to  $C$ , and having an angle  $ABM$  equal to  $D$ .

Q.E.F.

#### NOTE.

If Playfair's Axiom be used instead of Ax. 12, the Subsidiary Proof will run as follows:—

- $$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \therefore GB \text{ and } HB \text{ intersect.} \\ \text{and } GB \text{ is } \parallel \text{ to } FE \text{ ..... Const.} \\ \therefore HB \text{ is not } \parallel \text{ to } FE, \text{ and if produced will meet it... Playfair's Axiom.} \end{array} \right.$$

#### EXERCISES.

1. Construct the parallelogram as above, *accurately*, with ruler and compasses.
2. Which other angle of the parallelogram  $LB$  is equal to  $D$ ?
3. Prove that a square is a parallelogram, and explain why the *converse* of this is not true.
4. Does this Problem enable you to make an oblong equal to a given triangle? Give your reasons, and draw a figure.

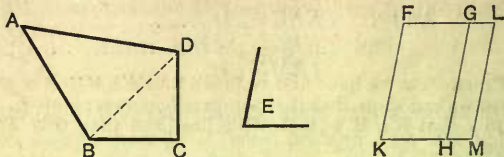
#### EXERCISES ON PROP. XLIII.

1. Show that  $BK, KD$ , are parallelograms.
2. Prove that the parallelogram  $EC$  = the parallelogram  $HC$ .
3. Draw two parallelograms which have adjoining parts of the same line for diameters, and then draw the corresponding complements.
4. Prove that all the parallelograms in the figure of Prop. XLIII. are equiangular to each other.

## PROPOSITION XLV. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—To describe a parallelogram equal to a given rectilineal figure, and having an angle equal to a given rectilineal angle.

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABCD$  be the given rect<sup>l</sup> figure, and  $E$  the given angle;



It is required to describe a parallelogram equal to  $ABCD$ , and having an angle equal to  $E$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. Join  $BD$ .
2. Describe  $\square^{\text{gram}} FKHG$ , equal to  $\triangle ABD$ , and having an  $\angle FKH$  equal to  $\angle E$ .....I. 42.
3. Apply to the st. line  $GH$  the  $\square^{\text{gram}} GM$ , equal to  $\triangle BCD$ , and having  $\angle GHM$  equal to  $\angle E$ .....I. 44.

Then shall  $FKML$  be the parallelogram required.

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore \angle FKH = \angle E$ .....Const.  
and  $\angle GHM = \angle E$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore \angle FKH = \angle GHM$ .....Ax. 1.  
Add to each the  $\angle KHG$ .  
 $\therefore \angle^s FKH, KHG = \angle^s KHG, GHM$ .....Ax. 2.  
But  $\angle^s FKH, KHG =$  two right angles.....I. 29.  
 $\therefore \angle^s KHG, GHM =$  two right angles.....Ax. 1.  
 $\therefore KHM$  is a straight line .....I. 14.
2.  $\therefore FG$  is  $\parallel$  to  $KM$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore \angle FGH = \text{alt}^e \angle GHM$  .....I. 29.  
Add to each the  $\angle HGL$ .  
 $\therefore \angle^s FGH, HGL = \angle^s GHM, HGL$ .....Ax. 2.  
But  $\angle^s GHM, HGL =$  two right angles.....I. 29.  
 $\therefore \angle^s FGH, HGL =$  two right angles.....Ax. 1.  
 $\therefore FGL$  is a straight line.....I. 14.

3.  $\therefore FK$  and  $LM$  are each  $\parallel$  to  $GH$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore FK$  is  $\parallel$  to  $LM$ .....I. 30.  
 $\therefore FKML$  is a parallelogram.....Def. 36.
4.  $\therefore \square^{\text{gram}} FH = \triangle ABD$ ..... Const.  
 and  $\square^{\text{gram}} GM = \triangle BCD$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore \square^{\text{gram}} FM = \text{fig. } ABCD$ .....Ax. 2.  
 and  $\angle FKM = \angle E$ .....Const.

WHEREFORE, a parallelogram  $FM$  has been made, etc.

Q.E.F.

# NOTES.

In this Proposition we have first to prove that  $FKML$  is a parallelogram, before we can show that it is the parallelogram required. Hence we first prove that  $KHM$  is a straight line, and then that  $FGL$  is a straight line.

In the case given the rectilinear figure has four sides. If it had more than four sides we should have to divide it into three or more triangles, and then construct parallelograms equal to those triangles successively.

This method of dividing a rectilinear figure into triangles suggests another proof of the First Corollary of Prop. XXXII.

CONSTRUCTION—Join one angular point ( $A$ ) to all the others, except the two on either side of it.

PROOF— $\therefore$  Each side except the two which meet in  $A$ , belongs to a separate triangle.

$\therefore$  This gives a number of triangles which is *two less* than the number of sides.

Now, All the  $\angle^s$  of the  $\triangle^s$  make up The  $\angle^s$  of the figure.  
 And The  $\angle^s$  of 2 other  $\triangle^s$  = 4 rt.  $\angle^s$ .....I. 32.  
 $\therefore$  The  $\angle^s$  of as many  $\triangle^s$  as the figure has sides } = { The  $\angle^s$  of the figure  
 with 4 rt.  $\angle^s$ .....Ax. 3.  
 $\therefore$  The  $\angle^s$  of the figure } = { Twice as many rt.  $\angle^s$   
 with 4 rt.  $\angle^s$  as the figure has sides...I. 32.

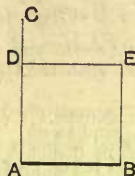
# EXERCISES.

- Construct the figure of this Problem accurately with ruler and compasses, showing all the working.
- How do you know that  $FG$  is parallel to  $KH$ ?
- In Part 2 of the Proof we say "Because  $FG$  is parallel to  $KM$ ." Why not "Because  $FL$  is parallel to  $KM$ "?
- Show how to make a parallelogram equal to a given six-sided figure, and prove your construction.
- Suppose we were required to make a parallelogram equal to a given 12-sided figure, what is the smallest number of triangles into which it could be divided?

## PROPOSITION XLVI. PROBLEM.

GEN. ENUN.—*To describe a square upon a given straight line.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $AB$  be the given straight line ;



It is required to describe a square on  $AB$ .

## CONSTRUCTION—

1. From  $A$  draw  $AC \perp^r$  to  $AB$ .....I. 11.
  2. From  $AC$  cut off  $AD$  equal to  $AB$ .....I. 3.
  3. Through  $D$  draw  $DE \parallel$  to  $AB$ , and through  
 $B$  draw  $BE \parallel$  to  $AD$ , meeting  $DE$  in  $E$ .....I. 31.
- Then shall  $ABED$  be a square.

## PROOF—

1.  $\therefore ABED$  is a  $\square^{gram}$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore AB = DE$  }  
and  $AD = BE$  } .....I. 34.  
But  $AB = AD$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore$  the  $\square^{gram}$  has all its sides equal.
2.  $\therefore AD$  meets the  $\parallel^ls DE, AB$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore \angle^s BAD, ADE =$  two rt.  $\angle^s$ .....I. 29.  
But  $\angle BAD$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore \angle ADE$  is a rt.  $\angle$ ,  
and the opp<sup>te</sup>  $\angle^s$  of  $ABED$  are equal.....I. 34.  
 $\therefore$  each of the  $\angle^s ABE, BED$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .  
 $\therefore ABED$  has all its sides equal and all its  
angles right angles,  
 $\therefore$  it is a square.....Def. 30.

WHEREFORE, a square has been described, etc.

Q.E.F.



## COROLLARY—

From this proof it is evident that every parallelogram which has one right angle has all its angles right angles.

## NOTES.

The expression used in Arithmetic and Algebra, "the square of a quantity," is closely connected with the Geometrical Expression, "the square on  $AB$ ."

"The square of  $x$ " means " $x$  multiplied by  $x$ ," and "the square of 6" means "6 multiplied by 6," and so on.

Now, if the straight line  $AB$  be 6 inches long, then the area of "the square on  $AB$ " is 36 inches, *i.e.*, the number of square inches in it is  $6^2$  (or the square of 6).

Similarly, if  $AB$  is  $x$  inches long, the number of square inches in "the square on  $AB$ " is  $x^2$  (the square of  $x$ ).

## EXERCISES.

1. Show that not more than one square can be described on the same straight line, and on the same side of it.
2. Hence, or otherwise, show that if two straight lines are equal the squares described on them are also equal.
3. Prove the Corollary.
4. How does the Corollary of this Proposition enable us to modify Euclid's definitions of a square and an oblong?
5. Draw a straight line 3 inches long, describe a square on it, and draw straight lines to divide it so as to show the number of square inches it contains.
6. How many square feet are there in the square on a line
  - (i.) 2 feet long,
  - (ii.) 5 feet long,
  - (iii.) 17 feet long?

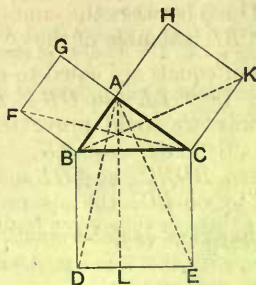
Draw figures to illustrate the truth of your answers.

7. Prove that if two squares are equal, a side of the one is equal to a side of the other.
8. If a square contains 49 square inches, what is the length of the line on which it is described?
9. Explain in your own words what is the connexion between "the square of a quantity" and "the square on a line." Which of the two expressions do you suppose is derived from the other?

## PROPOSITION XLVII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*In any right-angled triangle,  
The square which is described on the side subtending the right angle* } is equal to { *the squares described on the sides which contain the right angle.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$  be a right-angled  $\triangle$ , with  $BAC$  the rt. angle;



Then shall sq. on  $BC$  = sqs. on  $BA$ ,  $AC$ .

## CONSTRUCTION—

1. On  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CA$  describe the sqs.  $BE$ ,  $BG$ ,  $AK$  respectively.....I. 46.
2. Through  $A$  draw  $AL \parallel$  to  $BD$ , or  $CE$ , meeting  $DE$  in  $L$ .....I. 31.
3. Join  $FC$ ,  $BK$ ,  $AD$ ,  $AE$ .

## PROOF—

1.  $\therefore \angle BAC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .....Given.  
and  $\angle BAG$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore$  the adj.  $\angle^s$   $BAC$  and  $BAG$  = two rt.  $\angle^s$ .  
 $\therefore GAC$  is a st. line.....I. 14.  
Similarly  $BAH$  is a st. line.
2. Now  $\therefore \angle DBC = \angle FBA$ .....Ax. 11.  
Adding to each the  $\angle ABC$ ,  
 $\therefore \angle ABD = \angle FBC$ .....Ax. 2.

And in the  $\triangle^s ABD, FBC,$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} AB = FB \dots\dots\dots \text{Const.} \\ BD = BC \dots\dots\dots \text{Const.} \\ \angle ABD = \angle FBC \dots\dots\dots \text{Just proved.} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore \triangle ABD = \triangle FBC \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$$

3.  $\therefore \triangle FBC$  and sq.  $GB$  are on the same base  $FB$  and between same  $\parallel^s FB, GC,$   
 $\therefore$  Sq.  $GB$  is double of  $\triangle FBC \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 41.}$

And  $\therefore \triangle ABD$  and  $\square^{\text{gram}} BL$  are on the same base  $BD$  and between the same  $\parallel^s BD, AL,$   
 $\therefore \square^{\text{gram}} BL$  is double of the  $\triangle ABD \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 41.}$

But doubles of equals are equal to each other,  
 $\therefore \square^{\text{gram}} BL = \text{sq. } GB \dots\dots\dots \text{Ax. 6.}$

In the same way we could prove that  
 $\square^{\text{gram}} CL = \text{sq. } AK.$

$\therefore$  the whole sq.  $BDEC = \text{sqs. } GB \text{ and } AK \dots\dots\dots \text{Ax. 2.}$   
*i.e.* the sq. on  $BC =$  the sqs. on  $BA, AC.$

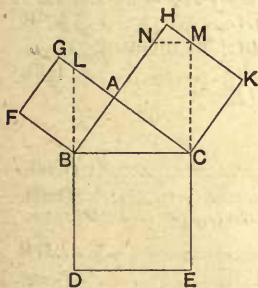
WHEREFORE, in any right-angled triangle, etc.

Q.E.D.

# NOTE.

This Proposition—one of the most important in Book I.—is said to have been discovered by Pythagoras, who flourished about 500 B.C., 200 years before Euclid.

## EXERCISES.



1. Draw the figure given here carefully. ( $DB$  and  $EC$  are produced to  $L$  and  $M$  respectively, and  $MN$  is parallel to  $BC$ .)

Cut the smaller squares out with a sharp penknife, and divide them into parts by cutting along the dotted lines. Now show that the five pieces of the two smaller squares can be made to fit exactly on the space of the larger one.

2. Show that Prop. xlvii. holds for a right-angled triangle whose sides are 3, 4, and 5 inches respectively.

3. Prove that the parallelogram  $CL =$  the square  $AK.$

4. Prove that  $BAH$  is a straight line.

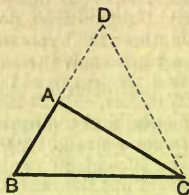
5. Given two straight lines, find a third straight line, the square on which shall be equal to the sum of the squares on the other two.

6. Make a square which shall be double of a given square.

## PROPOSITION XLVIII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If the square described on one of the sides of a triangle be equal to the squares described upon the other sides of it, the angle contained by these two sides is a right angle.

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$  such that sq. on  $BC$  = sqs. on  $BA$  and  $AC$ ;



Then shall the angle  $BAC$  be a right angle.

CONSTRUCTION—

1. From  $A$  draw  $AD \perp$  to  $AC$  ..... I. 11.
2. Make  $AD = AB$ , and join  $DC$ ..... I. 3.

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore DA = AB$ ..... Const.  
 $\therefore$  sq. on  $DA$  = sq. on  $AB$ .  
 Add to each the sq. on  $AC$ .  
 $\therefore$  sqs. on  $DA, AC$  = sqs. on  $BA, AC$  ..... Ax. 2.  
 But sqs. on  $DA, AC$  = sq. on  $DC$ ..... I. 47.  
 And sqs. on  $BA, AC$  = sq. on  $BC$ ..... Given.  
 $\therefore$  sq. on  $DC$  = sq. on  $BC$ ..... Ax. 1.  
 $\therefore DC = BC$ .
2. In the  $\triangle^s ABC, DBC$ ,  
 $\therefore \begin{cases} BA = DA \text{..... Const.} \\ AC = AC \text{..... Common.} \\ BC = CD \text{..... Just proved.} \end{cases}$   
 $\therefore \angle BAC = \angle DAC$ ..... I. 8.  
 But  $\angle DAC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ ..... Const.  
 $\therefore \angle BAC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .

WHEREFORE, if the square described, etc.

Q.E.D.



## NOTE.

Avoid the mistake of saying, in the Construction (1), "produce  $BA$  to  $D$ ."  $AD$  must be drawn perpendicular to  $AC$ .

## EXERCISES.

1. Prove that the triangle whose sides are 12, 16, 20 inches respectively is right-angled.
2. Which of the following triangles are right-angled?—(1) Sides 4, 5, 6 inches; (2) Sides 5, 12, 13 inches; (3) Sides 7, 8, 10 inches.
3. If the two sides of a right-angled triangle are 6 and 8 inches long respectively, what is the length of the hypotenuse?
4. If the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle is 13 inches long, and one of the sides 12 inches, find the length of the other side.
5. Given hypotenuse = 25 inches, side 24 inches, find the other side.
6. Given sides 9 and 12 inches, find the hypotenuse.
7. Would it be possible to get a straight 100 yards course on a rectangular field, whose sides are 70 and 80 yards respectively? Draw a figure to show where you would put the course.
8. If a man stands 120 yards away from the foot of a tower whose height is 150 feet, what distance in a straight line will the top of the tower be from the place where he is standing. Draw a sketch to represent it.

END OF BOOK I.

## BOOK II.

## DEFINITIONS.

1. A **Rectangle**, or right-angled parallelogram, is said to be contained by any two of the straight lines which contain one of the right angles.

2. In every parallelogram the figure composed of *either* of the parallelograms about the diameter, together with the two complements, is called a **Gnomon**.

## NOTES.

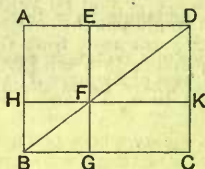


FIG. 1.

1. In the above figure the rectangle  $ABCD$  is said to be contained by  $AB$  and  $AD$ , or by  $AD$  and  $DC$ , etc., and is shortly referred to as “the rectangle  $AB \cdot AD$ .” This method of denoting the rectangle is in conformity with Algebraic usage; for, if the length of  $AD$  be  $a$  inches, and the length of  $AB$ ,  $b$  inches, then the area of the figure  $AC$  will be  $a \cdot b$  square inches, or, more shortly,  $ab$  square inches. So, if  $AD$  represents 8 feet, and  $AB$  5 feet, then the area of the rectangle  $ABCD$  represents  $(5 \times 8 =) 40$  square feet.

2. The parallelogram  $HG$ , with the two complements  $AF$  and  $FC$ , form the gnomon  $EHC$ , or  $AGK$ , denoted by the letters at opposite angles of the parallelograms which compose it. Similarly, the parallelogram  $EK$ , with the complements  $AF$  and  $FC$ , form the gnomon  $AKG$  or  $CEH$ .

## EXERCISES.

- What is the name given to a rectangle in Book I.?
- In the above figure, which are the rectangles contained by
 

(i.) $AE$ and $AH$ .	(iv.) $BG$ and $EF$ .
(ii.) $BG$ and $HB$ .	(v.) $DK$ and $CG$ .
(iii.) $KF$ and $DK$ .	(vi.) $CG$ and $BH$ .
- In the figure of I. 47, construct the rectangle contained by  $AB$  and  $AC$ , and that in I. 48 contained by  $AD$  and  $AC$ .

4. If the side of a square be 4 feet, what is its area?

5. What are the areas of the rectangles whose adjacent sides are respectively

(i.) 3 inches and 4 inches.

(iii.) 8 inches and 1 yard.

(ii.) 6 feet and 3 feet.

(iv.) 1 pole and 60 feet.

Show the truth of your answer to (i.) by a figure.

6. Is a square a rectangle? Is a rectangle a square?

7. How many gnomons are there in Fig. 2? Name them.

8. In this figure point out the rectangles contained by

(i.)  $DN$  and  $MG$ .

(iii.)  $EX$  and  $OR$ .

(ii.)  $PX$  and  $RL$ .

(iv.)  $BD$  and  $GP$ .

9. If the area of a rectangle be 24 square inches, and one of its sides be 3 inches, what is the length of the other side? Show by a figure.

10. What is the length of the side of a square whose area is 144 square feet?

11. If two sides of a rectangle be  $a$  feet, and  $b$  feet respectively, what is its area?

12. Are any of the sides of a rectangle equal?

13. If  $x^2$  represent the area of a square  $ABCD$ , what does  $x$  represent?

14. Given two straight lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , construct the rectangle which they represent.

15. Find the area of a square whose perimeter is 22 yards.

16. What is the area of a rectangle whose perimeter is 22 yards?

17. What else must be given in the above question?

18. Find each of the other sides of a rectangle—

(i.) When the area is 1 acre, and one side is 88 yards;

(ii.) When the area is 15 square inches, and two adjacent sides together are 8 inches.

19. If  $a+b$  be the length of a straight line  $AB$ , what is the area of the square on  $AB$ ?

20. If  $c$  be the length of another line  $KL$ , what area is represented (i.) by  $c^2$ ; (ii.) by  $(a+b)c$ ?

21. If  $ABCD$  be a rectangle draw the rectangle which is contained by half  $AB$  and half  $BC$ .

22. If two opposite sides of a rectangle be each 4 inches, what do you know about its area?

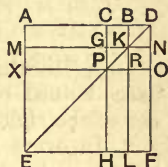
23. If  $ABCD$  be a rectangle, by what sides may it be said to be contained?

24. If two opposite sides of a square be each 4 inches, what do you know about its area?

25. Show, by trial, that a square whose perimeter is 24 inches has a larger area than an oblong with the same perimeter. In which cases do you find the area of the oblong the greatest.

26. In Figure 1, by what are the rectangles  $EFKD$  and  $AEFH$  said to be contained? How many answers can be given for each rectangle?

27. Why are  $AF$  and  $FC$  called "complements"? (Fig. 1.)

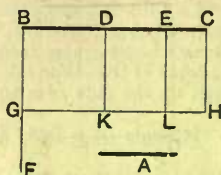


## PROPOSITION I. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If there be two straight lines, one of which is divided into any number of parts,

Then the rectangle  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{contained by the} \\ \text{two straight lines} \end{array} \right\}$  is equal to  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the rectangles contained by the} \\ \text{undivided line, and the several} \\ \text{parts of the divided line.} \end{array} \right.$

PART. ENUN.—Let  $A$  and  $BC$  be two straight lines, one of which,  $BC$ , is divided into parts at the points  $D, E$ ;



Then shall

the rect.  $A \cdot BC$  = the rects.  $A \cdot BD$ ,  $A \cdot DE$ , and  $A \cdot EC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. From  $B$ , draw  $BF \perp$  to  $BC$ .....I. 11.
2. From  $BF$ , cut off  $BG$  equal to  $A$ .....I. 3.
3. Through  $G$ , draw  $GH \parallel$  to  $BC$ .....I. 31.
4. Through  $D, E, C$ , draw  $DK, EL, CH$ , respectively,  
 $\parallel$  to  $BG$ , and meeting  $GH$ , in  $K, L, H$ .....I. 31.

PROOF—

Rect.  $A \cdot BC$  = the figure  $BH$  ( $\because BG = A$ ).....Const.  
 = the figs.  $BK, DL, EH$ .  
 = the rects.  $BG \cdot BD$ ;  $DK \cdot DE$ ;  $EL \cdot EC$ .  
 = the rects.  $A \cdot BD$ ;  $A \cdot DE$ ;  $A \cdot EC$ .  
 ( $\because BG = DK = EL = A$ ) .....I. 34.

WHEREFORE, If there be two straight lines, etc.

Q.E.D.

## ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $A = x$ ,  $BD = a$ ,  $DE = b$ ,  $EC = c$ .

Then  $BC = a + b + c$ .

We have to show that

$$x \cdot (a + b + c) = xa + xb + xc.$$

Which is evident.

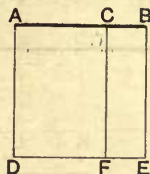
Q.E.D.



PROPOSITION II. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be divided into any two parts,  
 Then the rectangles con-  
 tained by the whole } are equal to { the square on the whole  
 and each of the parts } line.

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be divided into two parts  
 at  $C$ ;



Then shall

rects.  $BA.AC$  and  $AB.BC$  together = sq. on  $AB$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. On  $AB$  describe the square  $ADEB^*$ .....I. 46.
2. Through  $C$  draw  $CF \parallel$  to  $AD$  or  $BE$ .....I. 31.

PROOF—

Sq. on  $AB$  = figure  $ADEB$ .....Const.  
 = figs.  $AF$  and  $CE$ ,  
 = rects.  $DA.AC$  and  $EB.BC$ ,  
 = rects.  $BA.AC$  and  $AB.BC$ .....Const.  
 ( $\because DA = EB = AB$ ).....Const.

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AC = a$ ,  $CB = b$ .

Then  $AB = a + b$ .

We have to prove that

$$(a+b)a + (a+b)b = (a+b)^2,$$

$$\text{i.e. } (a+b)(a+b) = (a+b)^2.$$

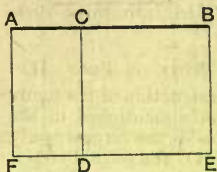
Q.E.D.

\* See Note on page 115.

## PROPOSITION III. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be divided into any two parts,  
 Then the rectangle } is equal to {  
 contained by the whole } the rectangle contained by  
 line and one of the } the two parts,  
 parts } together with the square on  
 the aforesaid part.

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be divided into two parts  
 at  $C$ ;



Then shall

rect.  $AB \cdot BC$  = rect.  $AC \cdot CB$  together with sq. on  $BC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. On  $BC$  describe the square  $BCDE$ \*.....I. 46.
2. Produce  $ED$  to  $F$ .
3. Through  $A$  draw  $AF \parallel$  to  $CD$  or  $BE$ .....I. 31.

PROOF—

Rect.  $AB \cdot BC$  = figure  $AE$  ( $\because BE = BC$ ).....Const.  
 = figs.  $AD$ , and  $CE$ .  
 = rect.  $AC \cdot CD$ , and sq. on  $BC$ .....Const.  
 = rect.  $AC \cdot CB$ , and sq. on  $BC$ ..( $\because CD = CB$ .)

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AC = a$ ,  $BC = b$ .

Then  $AB = a + b$ .

We have to prove that

$$(a + b)b = a \cdot b + b^2.$$

Which is evident.

Q.E.D.

\* See Note on page 115.

## EXERCISES ON PROP. I.

1. Prove that the Proposition is true when  $BD = 2$  feet,  $DE = 3$  feet,  $EC = 5$  feet,  $A = 4$  feet. Draw a figure to show the same result graphically. (Take a straight line about a quarter of an inch long to represent 1 foot.)
2. Prove that a room 8 feet wide and 160 square feet in area can be divided into three parts, each 8 feet long, and 5 feet, 7 feet, and 8 feet wide respectively. Draw a figure.
3. How do you know that  $DL$  is equal to the rectangle  $A.DE$ ?
4. What modification of Ax. 9 is used in the second line of the Proof?
5. If one of the parts of  $BC$  be the same length as  $A$ , what does the corresponding rectangle become?
6. Suppose  $BC$  is divided into three equal parts; what will the Enunciation then become?

## NOTE ON PROP. II.

The first step in the construction of the figures in Props. II.—VIII. is always to describe a square mentioned in the Enunciation. If more than one square is mentioned, the largest is always described first.

Also, in Props. IV.—VIII. the second step is to draw the diagonal of the square.

## EXERCISES ON PROP. II.

1. Show that this is a particular case of Prop. I.
2. How do you know that  $CF$  can be drawn parallel to  $AD$ , or  $BE$ ?
3. Prove the Proposition is true when  $AB$  is 8 inches and  $AC$  5 inches.
4. How could the Enunciation be modified if  $C$  were the middle point of  $AB$ ?
5. Give full reasons why  $AD = BE = AB$ . (Last line of Proof.)
6. What is the exact meaning of " $AC = a$ ," in the Algebraic Proof?

## EXERCISES ON PROP. III.

1. Prove that the rectangle  $AB.AC$  is equal to the rectangle  $AC.CB$  together with the square on  $AC$ .
2. What axiom is assumed at every line of this proof?
3. Prove the Proposition arithmetically, giving your own numbers for the lengths of the lines.
4. This Proposition is a special case of Prop. I. What corresponds here to  $x$  in the Algebraic Proof of Prop. I.?
5. What will the Enunciation become if  $AC$  is equal to  $BC$ ?

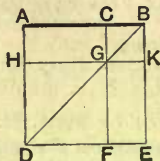
## EXERCISES ON PROP. IV.

1. Prove that the complements  $AG, GE$ , are not only equal in area, but also in all respects.
2. Prove Corollary II.
3. If, instead of the construction given, we took  $BK$  equal to  $BC$ , and drew  $KH$  parallel to  $AB$ , through  $K$ , and  $CF$  parallel to  $BE$ , through  $C$ , meeting  $KH$  in  $G$ ; prove that  $BD$  would pass through  $G$ . (I.e., join  $BG$  and  $GD$ , and prove them to be in the same straight line.)

## PROPOSITION IV. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be divided into any two parts,  
 Then the square on  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{the whole line} \\ \text{the whole line} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{is} \\ \text{equal} \\ \text{to} \end{array} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the squares on the two parts,} \\ \text{together with twice the rectangle} \\ \text{contained by the parts.} \end{array} \right.$

PART. ENUN.—Let the straight line  $AB$  be divided into two parts at  $C$ ;



Then shall

$$\text{sq. on } AB = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sqs. on } AC \text{ and } CB, \\ \text{together with twice the rect. } AC \cdot CB. \end{array} \right.$$

CONSTRUCTION—

1. On  $AB$  describe the square  $ADEB$ .....I. 46.
2. Join  $BD$ .\*
3. Through  $C$  draw  $CF \parallel^1$  to  $AD$  or  $BE$ , cutting  $BD$  in  $G$ ,...I. 31.
4. Through  $G$  draw  $HGK \parallel^1$  to  $AB$  or  $DE$ .....I. 31.

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore BD$  meets the  $\parallel^1$ s  $CF$ ,  $AD$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore$  extr  $\angle CGB =$  intr opp<sup>to</sup>  $\angle ADB$ .....I. 29.  
 But  $\angle ADB = \angle ABD$  ( $\because AB = AD$ ).....I. 5.  
 $\therefore \angle CGB = \angle CBG$ .....Ax. 1.  
 $\therefore CG = CB$ .....I. 6.  
 But  $CB = GK$  and  $CG = BK$ .....I. 34.  
 $\therefore$  the figure  $CGKB$  is equilateral.....Ax. 1.
2.  $\therefore CB$  meets the  $\parallel^1$ s  $CG$ ,  $BK$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $KBC$ ,  $GCB =$  two rt  $\angle^s$ .....I. 29.  
 But  $\angle KBC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore \angle GCB$  is also a rt.  $\angle$ .  
 $\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $CGK$ ,  $GKB$  opposite to them are  
 also right angles .....I. 34.  
 $\therefore$  the figure  $CGKB$  is rectangular.  
 $\therefore$  it is a square, and it is the square on  $BC$ .....Def. 30.

\* See Note on page 115.



3. Similarly we can show that  $HF$  is also a square,  
And it is the square on  $HG$ , which =  $AC$ .....I. 34.  
 $\therefore HF = \text{square on } AC$ .

4. Sq. on  $AB = \text{figs. } HF, CK, AG, GE$ .  
= sqs. on  $AC, BC$ , and twice  $AG$ .....I. 43.  
= sqs. on  $AC, BC$ , and twice rect.  $AC.CG$ .  
= sqs. on  $AC, BC$ , and twice rect.  $AC.CB$ .  
( $\because CG = CB$ ).....Proved above.

WHEREFORE, *if a straight line, etc.* Q.E.D.

COROLLARY I.—From this it is manifest, that parallelograms about the diameter of a square are likewise squares.

COROLLARY II.—The square on a straight line is equal to four times the square on half the line. (Take  $AC$  equal to  $CB$ .)

### SECOND PROOF.

GEN. AND PART. ENUNS.—As above.

PROOF—Sq. on  $AB = \text{rects. } BA.AC \text{ and } AB.BC$ .....II.2.  
=  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rect. } AC.CB \text{ and sq. on } AC, \\ \text{with rect. } AC.CB \text{ and sq. on } BC \end{array} \right\}$  ...II.3.  
= sqs. on  $AC, BC$ , with twice rect.  $AC.CB$ .

WHEREFORE, *if a straight line, etc.* Q.E.D.

### ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AC = a, BC = b$ . Then  $AB = a + b$ ,

We have to show that

$$(a + b)^2 = a^2 + b^2 + 2ab,$$

Which is easily proved by multiplication. Q.E.D.

### NOTES.

This Proposition is one of the most important in Book II. The same figure is used either alone, or with additions, in Props V.—VIII., and Parts 1, 2, 3 of the Proof are not repeated in these Propositions, but taken as proved. The result of these three parts of the Proof is summed up in Corollary I.

In connexion with the Second Proof, it should be noticed that if  $CF$  only be drawn, we have the figure of Prop. II., (corresponding to line 1 of the Proof); and if then  $HK$  be drawn we have, above and below it, two figures of Prop. III. (lines 2 and 3 of the Proof).

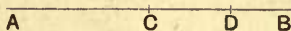
In this Second Method we lose the great advantage of actually seeing the equality of the areas: it, however, forms a useful exercise.



## PROPOSITION V. THEOREM. (Second Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be divided into two equal and also into two unequal parts,  
 Then the rectangle contained by the unequal parts, together with the square on the line between the points of section } is equal to { the square on half the line.

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be bisected at  $C$ , and divided unequally at  $D$ ;



Then shall

Rect.  $AD \cdot DB$ , with sq. on  $CD$  = sq. on  $CB$ .

PROOF—

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Sq. on } CB &= \text{rects. } CB \cdot BD, \text{ and } BC \cdot CD \dots\dots\dots \text{II. 2.} \\
 &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rect. } CB \cdot BD, \\ \text{with rect. } CD \cdot DB \text{ and sq. on } CD \dots\dots \text{II. 3.} \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rects. } AC \cdot DB, \text{ and } CD \cdot DB, \\ \text{with sq. on } CD \dots\dots\dots (\because AC=CB.) \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \text{rect. } AD \cdot DB, \text{ with sq. on } CD \dots\dots\dots \text{II. 1.}
 \end{aligned}$$

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

## ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AB = 2a$ ,  $CD = b$ ,

Then  $AC = a$ ,  $BC = a$ ,  $AD = a + b$ ,  $BD = a - b$ .

We have to show that

$$\begin{aligned}
 (a+b)(a-b) + b^2 &= a^2 \\
 \text{or, } (a+b)(a-b) &= a^2 - b^2, \\
 \text{a well-known identity.}
 \end{aligned}$$

Q.E.D.

## EXERCISES.

1. Prove by Playfair's Axiom that  $ML$  and  $AK$  will meet when produced.
2. Why do we not prove the fact that  $LG$  is equal to the square on  $CD$ ?
3. Why would it be wrong in line 4 of the Construction to say "through  $K$  draw  $KLM$  parallel to  $CB$  or  $EF$ "?
4. What figure do  $CM$  and  $HF$  make up?
5. Prove the Proposition, when  $D$  lies between  $A$  and  $C$ .
6. Write out in full the proof that  $LG$  is equal to the square on  $CD$ .

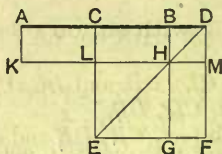
## PROPOSITION VI. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be bisected, and produced to any point,  
 Then the rectangle contained by the whole  
     line thus produced, and the part pro-  
     duced,  
 together with the square on half the line  
     bisected,

is equal to

the square on  
 the line made  
 up of the half  
 and the part  
 produced.

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be bisected at  $C$ , and produced to  $D$ ;



Then shall

rect.  $AD \cdot DB$ , with sq. on  $CB$  = sq. on  $CD$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. On  $CD$  describe the sq.  $CEFD$ .....I. 46.
2. Join  $DE$ .
3. Through  $B$  draw  $BHG \parallel$  to  $CE$  or  $DF$  }
4. Through  $H$  draw  $KLM \parallel$  to  $AD$  or  $EF$  } .....I. 31.
5. Through  $A$  draw  $AK \parallel$  to  $CL$  or  $DM$  }

PROOF—

The rect.  $AD \cdot DB$  } = { The fig.  $AM$ .....( $\because DB=DM$ ).  
 with the sq. on  $CB$  } { with the fig.  $LG$ .....II. 4. Cor. I.  
                                   = The figs.  $AL, CH, BM, LG$ .  
                                   = The figs.  $AL, HF, BM, LG$ .. I. 43.  
                                   = The figs.  $CH, HF, BM, LG$ ...I. 36.  
                                   = The figure  $CF$ .  
                                   = The square on  $CD$ .....Const.

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.



PROPOSITION VI. THEOREM. (Second Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be bisected, and produced to any point,  
 Then the rectangle contained by the whole  
 line thus produced, and the part pro-  
 duced,  
 together with the square on half the line  
 bisected,

is equal to  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the square on} \\ \text{the line made} \\ \text{up of the half} \\ \text{and the part} \\ \text{produced.} \end{array} \right.$

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be bisected at  $C$ , and pro-  
 duced to  $D$ ;



Then shall

Rect.  $AD \cdot DB$ , with sq. on  $CB$  = sq. on  $CD$ .

PROOF—

Sq. on  $CD$  = rectx.  $CD \cdot DB$ , and  $DC \cdot CB$  .....II. 2.

=  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rect. } CD \cdot DB, \\ \text{with rect. } CB \cdot DB \text{ and sq. on } CB \dots\dots \text{II. 3.} \end{array} \right.$

=  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rects. } CD \cdot DB, \text{ and } AC \cdot DB, \\ \text{with sq. on } CB, \dots\dots\dots (\because AC = CB.) \end{array} \right.$

= rect.  $AD \cdot DB$ , with sq. on  $CB$ , .....II. 1.

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AB = 2a$ ,  $CD = b$ .

Then  $AC = a$ ,  $BC = a$ ,  $AD = b + a$ ,  $BD = b - a$ .

We have to show that

$$(b + a)(b - a) + a^2 = b^2$$

$$\text{or, } (b + a)(b - a) = b^2 - a^2,$$

a well-known identity.

Q.E.D.

NOTE.

The Algebraic Proof for Props. V. and VI. shows that they are two cases of the same Theorem; viz., “The rectangle contained by the sum and difference of two straight lines is equal to the difference of their squares.”

In the second Proofs of Props. IV., V., and VI., we apply Prop. II. to the largest square mentioned in the Enunciation, and then Prop. III. to one or both of the rectangles thus obtained. (Cf. Note on Prop. IV.)

EXERCISES.

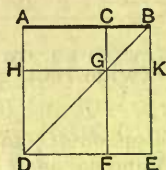
1. Prove geometrically that the rectangle contained by the sum and difference of two straight lines is equal to the difference of their squares.

2. Prove Prop. VI. Algebraically, taking  $AB = 2a$ ,  $BD = b$ .

## PROPOSITION VII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be divided into any two parts,  
 Then the squares on the whole line and on one of the parts  
 are equal to twice the rectangle contained by the whole and that part,  
 together with the square on the other part.

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be divided into two parts at  $C$ ;



Then shall

the sqs. on  $AB, BC = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{twice the rect. } AB, BC, \\ \text{together with the sq. on } AC. \end{array} \right.$

CONSTRUCTION—

The same as in Prop. IV.

PROOF—

Thesqs.on  $AB, BC =$  The figs.  $AE, CK$ .....II. 4, Cor. I.  
 $=$  The figs.  $AK, HF, GE, CK$ .  
 $=$  The figs.  $AK, HF, CE$ .  
 $=$  The figs.  $AK, HF, AK$ .....Ax. 2.

(adding  $CK$  to the equals  $AG$  and  $GE$ ).....I. 43.

$= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Twice the fig. } AK, \\ \text{with the fig. } HF \end{array} \right.$   
 $= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Twice the rect. } AB, BC, (\because BC=BK.) \\ \text{with sq. on } AC$ .....II. 4, Cor. I.

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

## PROPOSITION VII. THEOREM. (Second Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be divided into any two parts,

Then the squares on the whole line and on one of the parts } are { twice the rectangle contained  
by the whole and that part,  
to { together with the square on  
the other part.

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be divided into two parts at  $C$ ;

$A \quad \quad \quad C \quad \quad \quad B$

Then shall

sqs. on  $AB$ ,  $BC$  = twice rect.  $AB \cdot BC$ , with sq. on  $AC$ .

PROOF—

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Sq. on } AB, \text{ and sq. on } BC \} &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sqs. on } AC, CB, \text{ with twice rect. } AC \cdot CB, \\ \text{and sq. on } BC \dots\dots\dots \text{II. 4.} \end{array} \right. \\ &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{twice sq. on } BC, \text{ twice rect. } AC \cdot CB, \\ \text{and sq. on } AC. \end{array} \right. \\ &= \text{twice rect. } AB \cdot BC^* \text{ and sq. on } AC \dots \text{II. 3.} \end{aligned}$$

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

## ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AB = a$ ,  $BC = b$ ,

Then  $AC = a - b$ .

We have to prove that

$$a^2 + b^2 = 2ab + (a - b)^2,$$

$$\text{or, } a^2 - 2ab + b^2 = (a - b)^2.$$

Which is easily proved by Multiplication.

Q.E.D.

## EXERCISES.

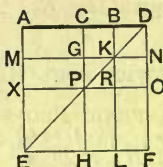
1. Prove that  $AK$  is equal to  $CE$  in all respects.
2. Which part of the figure is taken twice over in this Enunciation?
3. Prove that  $AF$  is equal to  $HE$ .
4. Write out the Construction for this Proposition in full.

\* Rect.  $AB \cdot BC$  = sq. on  $BC$ , and rect.  $AC \cdot CB$ ,  
 $\therefore$  Twice rect.  $AB \cdot BC$  = twice sq. on  $BC$ , and twice rect.  $AC \cdot CB$ .

## PROPOSITION VIII. THEOREM. (First Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be divided into any two parts,  
*four times the rectangle contained by the whole line and one of the parts, together with the square on the other part* } is equal to { *the square on the straight line made up of the whole and the first part.*

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be divided into two parts at  $C$ ;



Then shall

Four times the rect.  $AB \cdot BC$  } = { the sq. on the line  
 together with the sq. on  $AC$  } { made up of  $AB, BC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. Produce  $AB$  to  $D$ , so that  $BD = BC$ .....I. 3.
2. On  $AD$  describe the square  $AEFD$ .....I. 46.
3. Construct two figures such as in the preceding propositions.

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore CB = GK = PR$ .....I. 34.  
 and  $BD = KN = RO$ .....I. 34.  
 and  $CB = BD$ .....Const.

$\therefore CB, BD, GK, KN, PR, RO$ , are all equal.....Ax. 1.

Similarly,  $DN, NO, BK, KR, CG, GP$  are all equal.

Hence, the rects.  $CK, BN, GR, KO$ , are all equal...I. 36.

And  $\therefore CG = GP$ ,.....Just proved.

$\therefore$  rect.  $AG =$  rect.  $MP$ .....I. 36.

Similarly, rect.  $PL =$  rect.  $RF$ .

But rect.  $MP =$  rect.  $PL$ .....I. 43.

$\therefore$  rects.  $AG, MP, PL, RF$ , are all equal.....Ax. 1.



$$\begin{aligned}
2. \quad 4 \text{ times rect. } AB \cdot BC \quad & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{with sq. on } AC \end{array} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 4 \text{ times } AK.. (\because BC=BK) \\ \text{with fig. } XH...II.4, \text{Cor.I.} \end{array} \right. \\
& = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 4 \text{ times } AG, 4 \text{ times } CK, \dots II. 1. \\ \text{and the fig. } XH. \end{array} \right. \\
& = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the figs. } AG, MP, PL, RF, \\ CK, BN, GR, KO, \text{ and } XH.. \text{Proof (1).} \end{array} \right. \\
& = \text{the figure } AF, \\
& = \text{the square on } AD, \dots \dots \dots \text{Const,} \\
& = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the square on the line} \\ \text{made up of } AB \text{ and } BC \dots \dots \text{Const.} \end{array} \right.
\end{aligned}$$

WHEREFORE, *if a straight line, etc.*

Q.E.D.

### ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AB=a$ ,  $BC=b$ ,

Then  $AC=a+b$ ,  $AD=a+b$ .

We have to show that

$$\begin{aligned}
& 4ab + (a-b)^2 = (a+b)^2, \\
\text{i.e.,} \quad & (a+b)^2 - (a-b)^2 = 4ab, \\
\text{i.e.,} \quad & a^2 + 2ab + b^2 - (a^2 - 2ab + b^2) = 4ab.
\end{aligned}$$

Which is evident.

Q.E.D.

### EXERCISES.

1. Prove that  $AG$  is equal to  $RF$  in all respects.
2. Which figure is equal to the square on  $AB$ ? Prove the truth of your answer.
3. Which are the two figures spoken of in part 3 of the Construction?
4. Show that this Proposition incidentally affords a proof of II. 4, Cor. II.
5. If  $AC$  is equal to  $CD$ , prove that the square on  $AD$  is 16 times the square on  $BC$ .
6. Prove that four times the rectangle  $AB \cdot AC$ , together with the square on  $BC$ , is equal to the square on the line made up of  $AB$ ,  $AC$ .
7. Prove this Proposition Algebraically when  $AC=a$ ,  $CB=b$ .
8. Show from the Algebraic Proof that this Proposition may be regarded as a special case of the Theorem enunciated in the Note to Prop. VI.

## PROPOSITION VIII. THEOREM. (Second Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be divided into any two parts,  
*four times the rectangle contained by*  
*the whole and one of the parts,*  
*together with the square on the other*  
*part,* } *is equal to* { *the square on the*  
*straight line made*  
*up of the whole*  
*and the first part.*

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be divided into two parts  
 at  $C$ ;



Then shall

Four times the rect.  $AB \cdot BC$  } = { the sq. on the line  
 together with the sq. on  $AC$  } { made up of  $AB, BC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Produce  $AB$  both ways to  $D$  and  $E$ ,

Making  $BD = BC$  and  $AE = AC$ .....I. 3.

PROOF—

$\therefore EC$  is bisected at  $A$ , and produced to  $D$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore$  the rect.  $ED \cdot DC$  with sq. on  $AC =$  sq. on  $AD$ ...II. 6.  
 and  $ED =$  twice  $AB$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore$  twice the rect.  $AB \cdot DC$  with sq. on  $AC =$  sq. on  $AD$ ...II. 1.  
 and  $DC =$  twice  $BC$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore$  four times the rect.  $AB \cdot BC$  } = sq. on  $AD$ .....II. 1.  
 with sq. on  $AC$  }  
 = sq. on line made up of  $AB$  and  $BC$ .....Const.

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AB = a$ ,  $BC = b$ ,

Then  $AC = a - b$ ,  $AD = a + b$ .

We have to show that

$$4ab + (a - b)^2 = (a + b)^2,$$

i.e.,  $(a + b)^2 - (a - b)^2 = 4ab,$

i.e.,  $a^2 + 2ab + b^2 - (a^2 - 2ab + b^2) = 4ab.$

Which is evident.

Q.E.D.

Exercises. See page 125.

## NOTES ON PROPS. IV.-VIII.

We see from the Algebraic Proofs of Propositions IV.—VII., that they are the Geometrical properties corresponding to the three important Algebraic formulæ:—

$$\begin{aligned}(a+b)^2 &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 & (\text{II. 4}). \\ (a+b)(a-b) &= a^2 - b^2 & (\text{II. 5, 6}). \\ (a-b)^2 &= a^2 - 2ab + b^2 & (\text{II. 7}).\end{aligned}$$

Prop. VIII. may be regarded as the result of combining Props. IV. and VII. (subtracting equals from equals); or, if we take  $AD = 2a$ , and  $AC = 2b$ , we shall find the resulting Algebraic formula is

$$(a+b)(a-b) = a^2 - b^2$$

The Explanation of the single result obtained from Props. V. and VI. may be stated thus:—

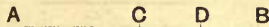


Fig. of Prop. V.

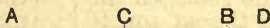


Fig. of Prop. VI.

In both cases  $AB$  is bisected, but in Prop. V. it is unequally divided into two parts *internally*, and in Prop. VI. it may be considered as divided into two parts ( $AD$  and  $DB$ ) *externally*. In Prop. V., passing from  $A$  to  $B$  through  $D$ , we proceed always in the same direction. But in Prop. VI., after going from  $A$  to  $D$ , we must go *back* to  $B$ ; and this change of direction corresponds to a negative sign in Algebra, as may be shown thus:—

If a quantity  $a$  be divided into two parts, one of which is  $x$ , then the other will be  $a - x$ .

Now suppose  $x$  is greater than  $a$ ,

i.e., that  $x = a + b$ ,

Then  $a - x = a - (a + b) = -b$ ,

i.e., the other part of  $a$  is a negative quantity.

Calling  $AB = a$ , and  $AD = x$ , in Props. V. and VI., we easily see that change of direction in Geometry, corresponds to a negative sign in Algebra.

If we take  $AC = a$ , and  $CD = b$ , as in the Algebraic Proof given above, we see that Prop. V. is for the case  $a > b$ , and Prop. VI. for the case  $b > a$ .

## EXERCISES.

1. Explain in your own words, how it is that Props. V. and VI. are cases of the same Proposition, and what is the difference between them.
2. Remembering the Note above on direction of lines, show that in the figure of Prop. VI.,

$$AB + BD + DA = 0.$$

3. If a man has to go from  $A$  to  $D$  (Figure of Prop. V.), and goes by mistake to  $B$  first, show that this gives an explanation of the equation

$$AB + BD = AD.$$

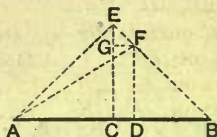
Compare with figure of Prop. VI.

## PROPOSITION IX. THEOREM. (First Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be divided into two equal and also into two unequal parts,

Then the squares } are { the square on half the line, and  
on the two un- } together { the square on the line between the  
equal parts } double of { points of section.

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be divided into two equal parts at  $C$ , and into two unequal parts at  $D$ ;



Then shall

sqs. on  $AD$ ,  $DB$  = twice the sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CD$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. From  $C$  draw  $CE \perp^r$  to  $AB$ .....I. 11.  
and make it equal to  $AC$  or  $CB$ .....I. 3.
2. Join  $EA$ ,  $EB$ .
3. Through  $D$  draw  $DF \parallel^l$  to  $CE$ , meeting  $EB$  in  $F$ ,  
and through  $F$  draw  $FG \parallel^l$  to  $AB$ .....I. 31.
4. Join  $AF$ .

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore AC = CE$  .....Const.  
 $\therefore \angle EAC = \angle AEC$ .....I. 5.  
and  $\therefore \angle ACE$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore \angle^s EAC$  and  $AEC$  tog<sup>r</sup> = a rt.  $\angle$ .....I. 32.  
and they are equal to one another,  
 $\therefore$  Each is half a rt.  $\angle$ .

Similarly each of the  $\angle^s CEB$ ,  $EBC$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ ,  
 $\therefore$  the whole  $\angle AEB$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .



2.  $\therefore \angle GEF$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ .....Just proved.  
 and  $\angle EGF$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , ( $\because \angle EGF = \angle ECB$ ).....I. 29.  
 $\therefore$  rem<sup>s</sup>  $EFG$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ .....I. 32.  
 $\therefore \angle GEF = \angle EFG$ ,  
 $\therefore EG = GF$ .....I. 6.
3.  $\therefore \angle FBD$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ .....Proved above.  
 and  $\angle FDB$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , ( $\because \angle FDB = \angle ECB$ ).....I. 29.  
 $\therefore$  rem<sup>s</sup>  $BFD$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ .....I. 32.  
 $\therefore \angle FBD = \angle BFD$ ,  
 $\therefore DF = DB$ .....I. 6.

4. The sqs. on  $AD$ ,  $DB$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \text{sqs. on } AD, DF \quad (\because DB = DF) \text{..Proved above.} \\
 &= \text{sq. on } AF \quad (\because \angle ADF \text{ is a rt. } \angle) \\
 &= \text{sqs. on } AE, EF \quad (\because \angle AEF \text{ is a rt. } \angle) \\
 &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sqs. on } AC, CE \quad (\because \angle ACE \text{ is a rt. } \angle) \\ \text{with sqs. on } EG, GF \quad (\because \angle EGF \text{ is rt. } \angle) \end{array} \right\} \text{I. 47.} \\
 &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{twice sq. on } AC \quad (\because AC = CE). \\ \text{with twice sq. on } GF \quad (\because EG = GF). \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \text{twice sqs. on } AC, CD \quad (\because CD = GF) \text{.....I. 34.}
 \end{aligned}$$

WHEREFORE, *if a straight line, etc.*

Q.E.D.

# ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AB = 2a$ ,  $CD = b$ ,

Then  $AC = a$ ,  $BC = a$ ,  $AD = a + b$ ,  $BD = a - b$ .

We have to show that

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(a + b)^2 + (a - b)^2 = 2a^2 + 2b^2, \\
 \text{i.e. } &a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + a^2 - 2ab + b^2 = 2a^2 + 2b^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

Which is evident.

Q.E.D.

## EXERCISES.

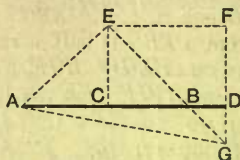
1. Why is  $GF$  equal to  $CD$ ?
2. Prove that the angle  $AFB$  is obtuse.
3. How do you know that the angle  $EGF$  is equal to the angle  $GCD$ , and the angle  $FDB$  to the angle  $ECB$ ?
4. Explain fully why the squares on  $AE$ ,  $EF$ , are equal to the squares on  $AC$ ,  $CE$ ,  $EG$ ,  $GF$ . (Proof 4.)

## PROPOSITION X. THEOREM. (First Proof.)

GEN. ENUN.—If a straight line be bisected and produced to any point,

Then the square on the whole line thus produced, and the square on the part of it produced } are together { the square on half the line bisected, and the square on the line made up of the half and the part produced.

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be bisected at  $C$ , and produced to  $D$ ;



Then shall  
the sqs. on  $AD$ ,  $DB$  = twice the sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CD$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

1. From  $C$  draw  $CE \perp^r$  to  $AB$  ..... I. 11.  
and make it equal to  $AC$  or  $CB$ .... I. 3.
2. Join  $AE$ ,  $EB$ .
3. Through  $E$  draw  $EF \parallel^l$  to  $AB$ ,  
and through  $D$  draw  $DF \parallel^l$  to  $CE$ ..... I. 31.

SUBSIDIARY  
PROOF.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \because EF \text{ meets the } \parallel^s EC, FD, \\ \therefore \angle^s CEF, EFD = \text{two rt. } \angle^s \text{..... I. 29.} \\ \therefore \angle^s BEF, EFD \text{ are less than two rt. } \angle^s, \text{..... Ax. 9.} \\ \therefore \text{lines } EB, FD \text{ will meet, if produced} \\ \text{towards } B, D \text{..... Ax. 12.} \end{array} \right.$

4. Let them be produced and meet in  $G$ .
5. Join  $AG$ .

PROOF—

1.  $\because AC = CE$ ..... Const.  
 $\therefore \angle EAC = \angle AEC$ ..... I. 5.  
and  $\because \angle ACE$  is a rt.  $\angle$ ..... Const.  
 $\therefore \angle^s EAC$  and  $AEC$  tog<sup>r</sup> = a rt.  $\angle$ ..... I. 32.  
and they are equal to one another,  
 $\therefore$  each is half a rt.  $\angle$ .

Similarly each of the  $\angle^s$   $CEB$ ,  $EBC$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ ,  
 $\therefore$  the whole  $\angle AEB$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .

2.  $\therefore \angle EBC$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ .....Just proved.  
 $\therefore \angle DBG$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ .....I. 15.  
 and  $BDG$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , ( $\therefore \angle BDG = \angle DCE$ ).....I. 29.  
 $\therefore$  rem<sup>s</sup>  $\angle DGB$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ .....I. 32.  
 $\therefore \angle DGB = \angle DBG$ ,  
 $\therefore BD = DG$ .....I. 6.
3.  $\therefore \angle EGF$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ .....Just proved.  
 and  $\angle EFG$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , ( $\therefore \angle EFG = \angle ECD$ ).....I. 34.  
 $\therefore$  rem<sup>s</sup>  $\angle FEG$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ .....I. 32.  
 $\therefore \angle FEG = \angle EGF$ ,  
 $\therefore GF = FE$ .....I. 6.

4. Sqs. on  $AD$ ,  $DB$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \text{sqs. on } AD, DG \quad (\because DG = DB) \dots \text{Proof (2).} \\
 &= \text{sq. on } AG \quad (\because \angle ADG \text{ is a rt. } \angle) \\
 &= \text{sqs. on } AE, EG \quad (\because \angle AEG \text{ is a rt. } \angle) \\
 &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sqs. on } AC, CE \quad (\because \angle ACE \text{ is a rt. } \angle) \\ \text{and sqs. on } EF, FG \quad (\because \angle EFG \text{ is a rt. } \angle) \end{array} \right\} \text{I. 47.} \\
 &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{twice sq. on } AC \quad (\because AC = CE) \dots \text{Const.} \\ \text{with twice sq. on } EF \quad (\because EF = FG) \dots \text{Proof (3).} \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \text{twice sqs. on } AC, CD \quad (\because EF = CD) \dots \text{I. 34.}
 \end{aligned}$$

WHEREFORE, *if a straight line, etc.*

Q.E.D.

N.B.—If Playfair's Axiom be used, the Subsidiary Proof is as follows:—

$\therefore EC$  is  $\parallel$  to  $FD$ ,  $\therefore EB$  cannot be  $\parallel$  to  $FD$ ...Playfair's Ax.  
 $\therefore EB$  and  $FD$  will meet if produced.

#### ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AB = 2a$ ,  $CD = b$ ,

Then  $AC = a$ ,  $BC = a$ ,  $AD = b + a$ ,  $BD = b - a$ .

We have to show that

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(b + a)^2 + (b - a)^2 = 2b^2 + 2a^2, \\
 \text{i.e., } &b^2 + 2ab + a^2 + b^2 - 2ab + a^2 = 2b^2 + 2a^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

Which is evident.

Q.E.D.

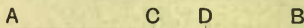
## PROPOSITIONS IX. AND X. THEOREMS. (Second Proof.)

## IX.

GEN. ENUN.—*If a straight line be divided into two equal, and also into two unequal parts,*

*Then the squares } are { the square on half the line,  
on the two un- } together { and the square on the line  
equal parts } double of { between the points of section.*

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be divided into two equal parts at  $C$ , and into two unequal parts at  $D$ ;



Then shall

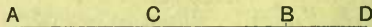
sqs. on  $AD$ ,  $DB$  = twice the sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CD$ .

## X.

GEN. ENUN.—*If a straight line be bisected, and produced to any point,*

*Then the square on the } are { the square on half the line  
whole line thus produced, } together { bisected, and the square on  
and the square on the } double of { the line made up of the  
part of it produced } { half and the part produced.*

PART. ENUN.—Let the st. line  $AB$  be bisected at  $C$ , and produced to  $D$ .



Then shall

the sqs. on  $AD$ ,  $DB$  = twice the sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CD$ .

PROOF—

(of both  
Props.) 1. Sq. on  $AD$  = { sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CD$ , with  
twice rect.  $AC$ .  $CD$ .....II. 4.  
= { sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CD$ , with  
twice rect.  $BC$ .  $CD$ ..( $\because AC=CB$ ).

2. twice rect.  $BC$ .  $CD$ , } = sqs. on  $BC$ ,  $CD$ .....II. 7.  
with sq. on  $BD$



$\therefore$  adding equals to equals,  
 the sqs. on  $AD, DB$  } = { sqs. on  $AC, BC$ , twice  
 with twice the rect. } { sq. on  $CD$ , and twice  
 $BC.CD$  } { rect.  $BC.CD$ .....Ax. 2

3. Take away twice the rect.  $BC.CD$ .

$\therefore$  the sqs. on  $AD, DB$  = { sqs. on  $AC, BC$ , with  
 twice sq. on  $CD$ .....Ax. 3.

$\therefore$  the sqs. on  $AD, DB$  = twice sqs. on  $AC, CD$ ..( $\because AC=BC$ ).

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

# NOTE.

First, "II. 4" is applied to  $AD$ , divided at  $C$ .

Then, "II. 7" (reversed) is applied to the part which remains after taking away  $AC$ .

The form of the Algebraic Proof shows that these two Propositions are different cases of the same Theorem.

If II. 7 be written in direct, instead of reverse, order, the above will give us another Proof of Prop. VIII.

The following is a Summary of the Props. used in the Second Proofs of these Propositions :—

In Prop. IV.....2, 3.		In Prop. VII.....4, 3.
„ V.....2, 3, 1.		„ VIII.....6, 1, 1.
„ VI.....2, 3, 1.		„ IX., X.....4, 7.

# EXERCISES.

1. Show how Props. IX. and X. may be regarded as two cases of the same Theorem, in a similar way to Note on Props. V. and VI.

2. What relation do these Propositions bear to Prop. VIII. ?

3. In the figure of II. 10 (First Proof), prove that  $GF$  is equal to  $CD$ .

4. If a straight line  $AB$  be produced to  $C$ , show that the squares on  $AB$  and  $AC$  = twice the rectangle  $AB.AC$  together with the square on  $BC$ .

5. Show by an Algebraic Proof of the above that it is a special case of Prop. VII., and indicate how it may be considered so, Geometrically.



Take away from both the fig.  $AK$ .

$\therefore$  fig.  $FH = \text{fig. } HD \dots \dots \text{Ax. 3.}$

*i.e.*, sq. on  $AH = \text{rect. } AB \cdot BH \dots (\because AB = BD).$

WHEREFORE, the straight line  $AB$  has been divided, etc.

Q.E.F.

### ALGEBRAIC SOLUTION.

Let  $AB = a$ ,  $AH = x$ .

It is required to divide  $a$  into two parts,  $x$  and  $a - x$ , so that

$$a(a - x) = x^2,$$

$$\text{i.e., } a^2 - ax = x^2,$$

$$\text{or } x^2 + ax - a^2 = 0,$$

which is the quadratic to determine  $x$ .

$$\text{Solving it, we find } AH = a \frac{\sqrt{5} - 1}{2}, \quad BH = a \frac{3 - \sqrt{5}}{2}.$$

### NOTES.

The second solution which the above quadratic equation also gives,

*viz.*,  $AH = -a \frac{\sqrt{5} + 1}{2}$ ,  $BH = a \frac{\sqrt{5} + 3}{2}$ , corresponds to the Problem:—

“Produce a straight line, so that the rectangle contained by the whole,  
“and the line made up of the whole and the part produced, may be  
“equal to the square on the part produced.”

The positive and negative signs of this second solution point to the geometrical fact that the straight line  $AB$  is to be divided *externally*. Cf. Note on Prop. V. and VI.

The Construction for this Problem is similar to that of Prop. XI.

1, 2, 3. As in Proposition.

4. On  $CF$  describe the square  $CFMN$ .

5. Produce  $BA$  to meet  $MN$  in  $L$ .

**Then shall rect.  $AB \cdot BL = \text{sq. on } AL$ .**

The proof is left as an exercise for the student.

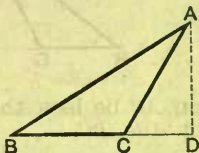
### EXERCISES.

1. Prove that  $AF$  is greater than  $AE$ .
2. After describing the square  $AFGH$ , how do you know that its point  $H$  will lie on  $AB$ ?
3. If  $FG$ ,  $DB$  be produced to meet in  $X$ , and  $CH$ ,  $HX$  joined, what conclusion would you draw about  $CH$ ,  $HX$ , supposing the converse of I. 43 to be true?
4. Write out in full the solution and proof of the Problem given in the above Notes.

## PROPOSITION XII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*In obtuse-angled triangles, if a perpendicular be drawn from either of the acute angles to the opposite side produced, Then the square on the side } is { the squares on the sides subtending the obtuse angle } greater { containing the obtuse angle by twice the rectangle contained by the side on which, when produced, the perpendicular falls, and the straight line intercepted without the triangle, between the perpendicular and the obtuse angle.*

PART. ENUN.—Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ , obtuse-angled at  $C$ , and from  $A$  let  $AD$  be drawn  $\perp^r$  to  $BC$  produced;



Then shall

sq. on  $BA$  be greater than sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CB$ ,  
by twice rect.  $DC \cdot CB$ .

PROOF—

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Sq. on } BA &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sq. on } BD, \\ \text{and sq. on } DA \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 47.} \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sqs. on } BC, CD, \text{ with twice rect. } DC \cdot CB \dots\dots \text{II. 4.} \\ \text{and sq. on } DA. \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sqs. on } CD, DA, \\ \text{with sq. on } BC, \text{ and twice rect. } DC \cdot CB. \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sq. on } AC \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 47.} \\ \text{and sq. on } BC \text{ with twice rect. } DC \cdot CB. \end{array} \right. \\
 \therefore \text{ sq. on } BA &\text{ is greater than sqs. on } AC, CB \\
 &\text{by twice the rect. } DC \cdot CB.
 \end{aligned}$$

WHEREFORE, in obtuse-angled triangles, etc.

Q.E.D.

## EXERCISE.

State and prove the converse of this Proposition by an *indirect* proof after the manner of I. 19, and I. 25.



PROPOSITION XIII. THEOREM.

GEN. ENUN.—*In every triangle, the square on the side subtending an acute angle is less than the squares on the sides containing that angle by twice the rectangle contained by either of these sides, and the straight line intercepted between the perpendicular let fall on it from the opposite angle, and the acute angle.*

PART. ENUN.—*Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ , acute-angled at  $B$ , and on  $BC$  let fall the  $\perp^r$   $AD$  from the opp<sup>te</sup>  $\angle$   $A$ .*

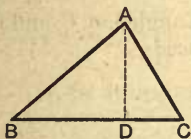


FIG. 1.

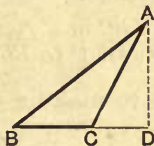


FIG. 2.

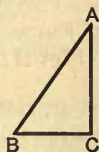


FIG. 3.

Then shall sq. on  $AC$  be less than sqs. on  $AB$ ,  $BC$  by twice rect.  $DB \cdot BC$ .

PROOF— $\therefore BC$  is divided at  $D$  (Fig. 1), or  $BD$  at  $C$  (Fig. 2),

$$\therefore \text{sqs. on } DB, BC = \begin{cases} \text{twice rect. } DB \cdot BC \\ \text{and sq. on } CD \dots \dots \dots \text{II. 7.} \end{cases}$$

Add to each the sq. on  $DA$ ,

$$\therefore \text{sqs. on } BD, DA \begin{cases} = \text{twice rect. } DB \cdot BC \\ \text{and sq. on } BC \end{cases} = \begin{cases} \text{twice rect. } DB \cdot BC \\ \text{and sqs. on } CD, DA \dots \text{Ax. 2.} \end{cases}$$

$$\text{i.e. sq. on } AB, \begin{cases} = \text{twice rect. } DB \cdot BC, \\ \text{and sq. on } BC \end{cases} = \begin{cases} \text{twice rect. } DB \cdot BC, \\ \text{and sq. on } CA \dots \dots \dots \text{I. 47.} \end{cases}$$

$\therefore$  sq. on  $AC$  is less than sqs. on  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  
by twice the rect  $DB \cdot BC$ .

In Fig 3,  $BC$  is the st. line between the  $\perp^r$  and acute  $\angle$ ,  
 $\therefore$  the rectangle in this case is the sq. on  $BC$ .

Now sq. on  $AB$  = sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CB$ .....I. 47.

Add to each the sq. on  $BC$ ,

$$\therefore \text{sqs. on } AB, BC = \begin{cases} \text{sq. on } AC \text{ with} \\ \text{twice sq. on } BC \dots \dots \dots \text{Ax. 2.} \end{cases}$$

$\therefore$  sq. on  $AC$  is less than sqs. on  $AB$ ,  $BC$   
by twice the square on  $BC$ .

WHEREFORE, in every triangle, etc.

Q.E.D.



## NOTES ON PROPS. XII., XIII.

Prop. XII. refers only to obtuse-angled triangles.

Prop. XIII. to every triangle, whether acute-angled (Fig. 1), obtuse-angled (Fig. 2), or right-angled (Fig. 3).

To remember which is the rectangle, notice that in both propositions, in naming it, we go from the foot of the perpendicular to *the vertex of the angle*, and then along the same side to the end of it; or, more shortly, "into the angle and out again."

## NOTE ON PROP. XIV.

This is the Geometrical operation which is the counterpart of the Algebraic Problem "to find the square root of a given quantity." It may be noticed that whilst Geometrically the solution is always possible, Algebraically it is not always so, though we can approximate to it as closely as we wish.

In this sense this Proposition may be regarded as a converse of I. 46.

## EXERCISES.

1. Write out the Proposition, producing  $CB$  to  $K$ , so that  $BK = BE$  instead of producing  $BE$ .
2. Of what shape must  $A$  be?
3. Construct the figure *accurately*, making  $BD = A$  by the method of I. 45.

## SUMMARY

Of the Algebraic forms of the Propositions in Book II.

PROP.	ALGEBRAIC FORM.
I.	$x(a+b+c+\dots) = ax+bx+cx+\dots$
II.	$(a+b)a+(a+b)b = (a+b)^2.$
III.	$(a+b)b = ab+b^2.$
IV.	$(a+b)^2 = a^2+2ab+b^2.$
V., VI.	$(a+b)(a-b) = a^2-b^2.$
VII.	$(a-b)^2 = a^2-2ab+b^2.$
VIII.	$(a+b)^2-(a-b)^2 = 4ab.$
IX., X.	$(a+b)^2+(a-b)^2 = 2a^2+2b^2.$
XI.	Solve the equation, $x^2+ax-a^2=0.$
XII.	_____
XIII.	_____
XIV.	Find the square root of $a.$

Propositions XII. and XIII. are closely connected with the important Trigonometrical formula

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A.$$

It will thus be seen that Book II. exhausts all the simple combinations of the Second Degree which can be formed with two letters.

If the connexions between the Geometrical and Algebraic Problems are carefully studied, the above list will form a very easy means of remembering which is which, of the Propositions of Book II.; the enunciations of which often bewilder a beginner on account of their great verbal similarity.

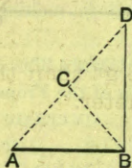
## APPENDIX.

---

### I. PROBLEM.

*To draw a straight line perpendicular to another straight line from one end of it, without producing the given line.*

Let  $AB$  be the given straight line and  $B$  the given end ;



It is required to draw from  $B$ , a st. line  $\perp^r$  to  $AB$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

On  $AB$  describe an isosceles  $\triangle ABC$ .

Produce  $AC$  to  $D$ , making  $CD = CA$ , and join  $BD$ .

$BD$  shall be  $\perp^r$  to  $AB$ .

PROOF—

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \because \angle CAB = \angle CBA \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{and } \angle CBD = \angle CDB \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 5.} \\
 & \therefore \angle ABD = \angle^s BAD \text{ and } BDA \dots\dots\dots \text{Ax. 2.} \\
 & \text{But these three } \angle^s = \text{two rt. } \angle^s \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 32.} \\
 & \therefore \angle ABD = 1 \text{ rt. } \angle.
 \end{aligned}$$

WHEREFORE, a straight line has been drawn, etc.

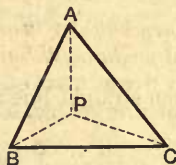
Q.E.F.



II. THEOREM.

*If from a point within a triangle, straight lines be drawn to the angular points of the triangle, these three straight lines shall be greater than half the perimeter of the triangle, but less than the whole perimeter.*

Let  $ABC$  be the  $\triangle$ , and  $P$  the given pt. ;



$PA, PB, PC$  shall be gr than the half, and less than the whole, perimeter.

PROOF—

1.  $\therefore \left. \begin{array}{l} PB, PC \text{ are gr than } BC \\ PC, PA \text{ „ „ } AC \\ PA, PB \text{ „ „ } AB \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots\text{I. 20.}$

$\therefore$  twice  $PA, PB, PC$  are greater than  $AB, BC, CA$ .

$\therefore PA, PB, PC$  are greater than half the perimeter.

2.  $\therefore \left. \begin{array}{l} BP, PC \text{ are less than } BA, AC \\ CP, PA \text{ „ „ } CB, BA \\ AP, PB \text{ „ „ } AC, CB \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots\text{I. 21.}$

$\therefore$  twice  $PA, PB, PC$  are less than twice  $AB, BC, CA$ .

$\therefore PA, PB, PC$  are less than the perimeter.

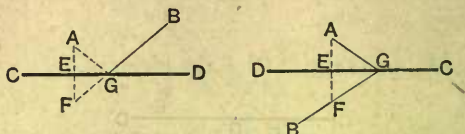
WHEREFORE, *if from a point, etc.*

Q.E.D.

## III. PROBLEM.

*From two given points, to draw two straight lines which shall make equal angles with a given straight line.*

Let  $A, B$ , be the given pts., and  $CD$  the given st. line ;



It is required to draw two st. lines from  $A$  and  $B$ , making equal angles with  $CD$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

From  $A$ , draw  $AE \perp$  to  $CD$ .....I. 12.

Produce  $AE$  to  $F$ , so that  $EF = AE$ .....I. 3.

Join  $FB$ , and let it (produced if necessary) meet  $CD$  in  $G$ .

Join  $AG$ .

$AG, BG$ , shall be the lines required.

PROOF—

In the  $\triangle^s AEG, FEG$

$\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} AE = FE \dots\dots\dots \text{Const.} \\ EG = EG, \\ \text{and } \angle AEG = \angle FEG \dots\dots\dots \text{Const.} \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore \angle AGE = \angle EGF \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$

$= \angle BGD \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 15.}$

WHEREFORE,  $AG$  and  $GB$  are drawn as required.

Q.E.F.

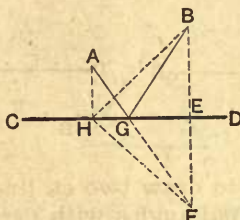
NOTE.

The above Proposition is of use in questions dealing with the reflexion of light.

IV. PROBLEM.

In a given straight line to find a point such that the sum of its distances from two given points on the same side of the line shall be a minimum (i.e. the least possible).

Let  $A, B$  be the points,  $CD$  the given st. line ;



It is required to find a point ( $G$ ) in  $CD$  such that  $AG, GB$  shall be a minimum.

CONSTRUCTION—

From  $A$  and  $B$  draw  $AG, BG$  making equal angles with  $CD$ .....App. iii.

$G$  shall be the point required.

Take any other pt.  $H$ , in  $CD$ , and join  $AH, BH, FH$ .

PROOF—

In the  $\triangle^s BEG, FEG$   
 $\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} BE = FE \\ EG = EG \\ \text{and } \angle BEG = \angle FEG \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{Const.}$

$\therefore BG = GF \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$   
 Similarly,  $BH = HF$ .

But  $AH, HF$  are  $g^r$  than  $AF \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 20.}$   
 i.e.  $AH, HB$  are  $g^r$  than  $AG, GB$ .

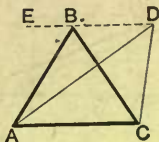
WHEREFORE,  $G$  is the point required.

Q.E.F.

## V. THEOREM.

*The perimeter of a triangle of given area, and on a given base, is a minimum when the triangle is isosceles.*

Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles  $\triangle$ , and  $ADC$  another equal  $\triangle$ , on the same base  $AC$ ;



The perimeter of  $ABC$  shall be less than the perimeter of  $ADC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Join  $BD$ , and produce it to  $E$ .

PROOF—

$\therefore \triangle ABC = \triangle ADC$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore ED$  is  $\parallel$  to  $AC$ .....I. 39.  
 $\therefore AB = BC$ ,.....Given.  
 $\therefore \angle BAC = \angle BCA$  .....I. 5.  
 $\therefore \angle EBA = \angle DBC$ .....Ax. 1, I. 29.  
 $\therefore$  the sum of  $AB, BC$  is a minimum.....App. iv.

WHEREFORE, *the perimeter, etc.*

Q.E.D.

## NOTE.

From this we infer, that of all triangles of equal area, the equilateral triangle has the minimum perimeter.

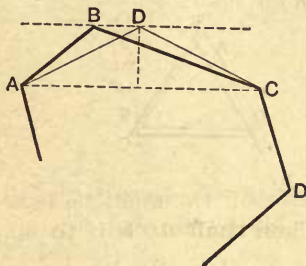
And, conversely, of all triangles of given perimeter, the equilateral triangle has the greatest area.



VI. THEOREM.

*If a polygon be not equilateral, an equal polygon with the same number of sides may be formed, having a less perimeter.*

Let  $ABCD \dots$  be a polygon which is not equilateral, and  $AB$ ,  $BC$  be two unequal adjacent sides;



It is required to show that a polygon of equal area to  $ABCD \dots$  can be formed, with a less perimeter.

CONSTRUCTION—

Join  $AC$ .

On  $AC$  make an isosceles  $\triangle$ , equiareal to  $ABC \dots$  I. 31, 10, 11

PROOF—

$\therefore AD, DC$  are less than  $AB, BC \dots$  App. v.  
 $\therefore$  if  $ADC$  be substituted for  $ABC$ , the new polygon will be unchanged in area, but will have a less perimeter.

WHEREFORE, if a polygon, etc.

Q.E.D.

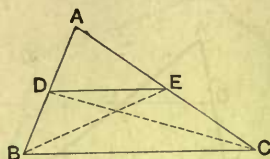
NOTE.

This Proposition leads us to the conclusion that “the perimeter of a polygon of given area, and given number of sides, is a minimum when the polygon is equilateral.”

## VII. THEOREM.

*The straight line joining the mid points of two sides of a triangle is parallel to the base; and conversely, if a straight line be drawn through the mid point of one side of a triangle parallel to the base, it bisects the other side.*

1. Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ , and  $DE$  a st. line joining the mid points of the sides;



Then shall  $DE$  be  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ .

CONSTRUCTION— Join  $CD$ ,  $BE$ .

PROOF—  $\because AD = DB$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore \triangle BDE = \triangle ADE$ .....I. 38.  
 Similarly  $\triangle CED = \triangle ADE$ ,  
 $\therefore \triangle BDE = \triangle CDE$ .....Ax. 1.  
 And they are on the same base  $DE$ ,  
 $\therefore BC$  is  $\parallel$  to  $DE$ .....I. 39.

2. Let  $D$  be the mid pt. of  $AB$ , and  $DE \parallel$  to  $BC$ .

Then shall  $AE = EC$ .

PROOF—  $\because AD = DB$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore \triangle BDE = \triangle ADE$ .....I. 38.  
 $\because DE$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore \triangle BDE = \triangle CED$ .....I. 37.  
 $\therefore \triangle ADE = \triangle CED$ .....Ax. 1.

Whence we can easily show by a "Reductio ad absurdum" that  $AE = CE$ .

WHEREFORE, the straight line joining, etc.

Q.E.D.

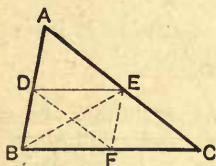
NOTE.

The converse may also be proved by means of Playfair's Axiom.

VIII. THEOREM.

*The straight line joining the mid points of the sides of a triangle is equal to half the base, and cuts off a quarter of the triangle.*

Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ , and  $D, E$ , mid pts. of  $AB, AC$ ;



Then shall (1)  $DE = \text{half } BC$ ,  
(2)  $ADE = \frac{1}{4} \text{ triangle } ABC$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Draw  $EF \parallel^1$  to  $AB$ , meeting  $BC$  in  $F$ .....I. 31.  
Join  $DF, BE$ .

PROOF—

1.  $DBFE$  is a  $\square^{\text{gram}}$  .....App. vii.  
 $\therefore EF = DB$ .....I. 34.  
 $= AD$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore AE$  is  $\parallel^1$  to  $DF$ .....I. 33.  
 $\therefore DECF$  is a  $\square^{\text{gram}}$ .  
Hence  $BF = DE$  } .....I. 34.  
 $= FC$  }  
 $\therefore DE = \text{half } BC$ .
2.  $\triangle ADE = \triangle DBE$  .....I. 38.  
 $= \frac{1}{2} \triangle ABE$ ,  
 $\triangle ABE = \triangle EBC$ .....I. 38.  
 $\therefore \triangle ADE = \frac{1}{4} ABC$ .

WHEREFORE, *the straight line, etc.*

Q.E.D.

## IX. PROBLEM.

To divide a straight line into any number of equal parts.

Let  $AB$  be the given st. line;



It is required to divide it into a given number of equal parts (say 5).

## CONSTRUCTION—

From  $A$  draw a st. line  $AE$  of unlimited length, making a small acute  $\angle$  with  $AB$ .

In  $AE$  take a pt.  $D$ , and mark off  $DF, FG, GH, HK$ , all equal to  $AD$ .....I. 3.

Join  $BK$ .

Through  $D, F, G, H$  draw st. lines  $\parallel$  to  $BK$ , meeting  $AB$  in  $K, L, M, N$  respectively.....I. 31.

Through  $G$  draw  $GPQ \parallel$  to  $AB$ .....I. 31.

$AB$  shall be divided equally at  $K, L, M, N$ .

## PROOF—

$\therefore GH = HK,$  } ..... Const.  
and  $HP$  is  $\parallel$  to  $KQ$ , }

$\therefore GP = PQ$ .....App. vii.

But  $GN, PB$  are  $\square$  <sup>grams</sup> .....Const.

$\therefore MN = NB$ .....I. 34.

In the same way we can show that all the other parts are equal.

WHEREFORE, the straight line has been divided as required.

Q.E.F.

## NOTES.

For another method, when the required number of parts is 3, see Appendix xvii.

If the number of parts required is a power of 2, Euc. I. 10 may be applied.

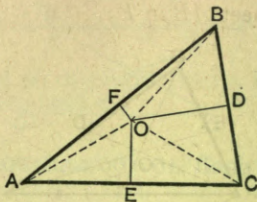




## XI. THEOREM.

*The straight lines drawn perpendicular to the sides of a triangle from their mid points, are concurrent (i.e., meet in a point).*

Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ ,  $D, E, F$ , the mid points of the sides, and let the  $\perp^r$   $EO, DO$  meet in  $O$ , and  $FO$  be joined;



Then shall  $FO$  be  $\perp^r$  to  $AB$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Join  $OA, OB, OC$ .

- PROOF— 1. In the  $\triangle^s AEO, CEO$ ,  
 $\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} AE = CE \\ EO = EO \\ \angle AEO = \angle CEO \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.}$   
 $\therefore AO = OC \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 4.}$   
 Similarly  $BO = OC$ .  
 $\therefore AO = BO \dots\dots\dots \text{Ax. 1.}$
2. In the  $\triangle^s AOF, BOF$ ,  
 $\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} AO = BO \\ OF = OF \\ FA = FB \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{Given.}$   
 $\therefore \angle OFA = \angle OFB \dots\dots\dots \text{I. 8.}$   
 $\therefore OF$  is  $\perp^r$  to  $AB \dots\dots\dots \text{Def. 10.}$

WHEREFORE, *the straight lines, etc.*

Q.E.D.

NOTE.

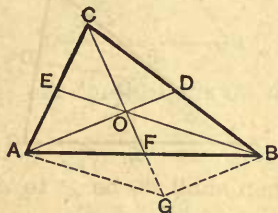
This Construction enables us to find a point equidistant from three given points.

XII. THEOREM.

*The medians of a triangle are concurrent.*

(I.e., the straight lines drawn from the angular points, to the mid points of the opposite sides).

Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ , and  $D, E$  the mid points of the sides  $BC, CA$ . Let  $AD, BE$  meet in  $O$ , and  $CO$  be joined, and produced to meet  $AB$  in  $F$ ;



Then shall  $AF = FB$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Through  $A$  draw  $AG \parallel$  to  $BE$ ,.....I. 31.  
and let it meet  $CO$  produced, in  $G$ .

Join  $BG$ .

PROOF—

$\therefore AE = EC$ .....Given.  
and  $EO$  is  $\parallel$  to  $AG$ .....Const.  
 $\therefore CO = OG$ .....App. vii  
 $\therefore CO = OG$ ,  
and  $CD = DB$ .....Given.  
 $\therefore OD$  is  $\parallel$  to  $GB$ .....App. vii.  
 $\therefore AOBG$  is a  $\square$  <sup>gram</sup>.  
 $\therefore AF = FB$ .....App. x.

WHEREFORE, the medians of a triangle are concurrent.

Q.E.D.

COROLLARY—

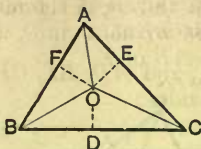
$\therefore OF = FG$ .....App. x.  
and  $CO = OG$ .....Proved above.  
 $\therefore OF = \frac{1}{3} CF$ .

So for the other medians.

## XIII. THEOREM.

*The angle-bisectors of a triangle are concurrent.*

Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ , and let the angle-bisectors  $AO$ ,  $BO$  meet in  $O$ ;



Then  $CO$  shall bisect the  $\angle ACB$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

From  $O$ , draw  $OD$ ,  $OE$ ,  $OF$ ,  $\perp^r$  to the sides.....I. 12.

PROOF—

1. In the  $\triangle^s BOF$ ,  $DOF$ ,  
 $\therefore \begin{cases} \angle FBO = \angle DBO & \text{..... Given.} \\ \angle OFB = \angle ODB & \text{..... Const.} \\ OB = OB. \end{cases}$   
 $\therefore OD = OF$ .....I. 26.  
 Similarly  $OF = OE$ ,  
 $\therefore OD = OE$ .....Ax. 1.
2. Sqs. on  $OE$ ,  $EC = \text{sq. on } OC$   
 $\qquad \qquad \qquad = \text{sqs. on } OD, DC$ .....I. 47.  
 But sq. on  $OE = \text{sq. on } OD$ ,  
 $\therefore \text{sq. on } CE = \text{sq. on } CD$ .....Ax. 3.  
 $\therefore CE = CD$ .
3. In the  $\triangle^s OEC$ ,  $ODC$ ,  
 $\therefore \begin{cases} OE = OD, \\ EC = CD, \\ OC = OC, \end{cases}$   
 $\therefore \angle OCD = \angle OCE$ .....I. 8.

WHEREFORE, the angle-bisectors of a triangle are concurrent.

Q.E.D.



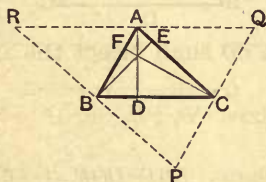
NOTE.

This construction enables us to find a point equidistant from three given lines.

XIV. THEOREM.

*The perpendiculars from the angular points of a triangle on the opposite sides are concurrent.*

Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ , and  $AD, BE, CF \perp^{\text{rs}}$  from  $A, B, C$  on the opposite sides ;



Then shall  $AD, BE, CF$ , be concurrent.

CONSTRUCTION—

Through  $A, B, C$  draw  $\parallel^{\text{ls}}$  to the opposite sides, meeting each other in  $P, Q, R$ .....I. 31.

PROOF—

$\therefore ABPC$  and  $ABCQ$  are  $\square^{\text{grams}}$ ,  
 $\therefore PC = AB = CQ$  .....I. 34.  
*i.e.*,  $PQ$  is bisected in  $C$ .

Similarly  $A$ , and  $B$ , are the mid pts. of  $QR, PR$ ,  
 $\therefore$  the  $\perp^{\text{rs}}$  at these pts. are concurrent.....App. xi.  
 and  $AD, BE, CF$ , are these  $\perp^{\text{rs}}$ .....I. 29.

WHEREFORE, *the perpendiculars, etc.*

Q.E.D.

NOTE.

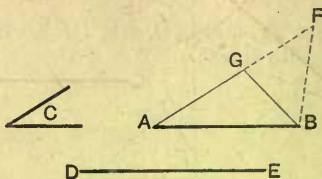
The point in which these perpendiculars meet, is called the *Ortho-centre* of the triangle.

The point in which the “medians” intersect, is called the *Centre of Gravity* of the triangle.

## XV. PROBLEM.

To construct a triangle, having given the base, one of the angles at the base, and the sum of the sides.

Let  $AB$  be the base,  $C$  the given  $\angle$ , and  $DE$  the sum of the sides.



## CONSTRUCTION—

At the pt.  $A$  make the  $\angle BAF = \angle C$ .....I. 23.

Make  $AF = DE$ .....I. 3.

Join  $BF$ .

At the pt.  $B$  make the  $\angle FBG = \angle GFB$ .....I. 23.

Let  $BG$  meet  $AF$  in  $G$ .

$ABG$  shall be the  $\triangle$  required.

## PROOF—

$\therefore \angle GBF = \angle GFB$ .....Const.

$\therefore GB = GF$ .....I. 6.

$\therefore AG, GB = AF = DE$ .....Ax. 2.

and  $\angle GAB = \angle C$ .....Const.

WHEREFORE, a triangle has been constructed, etc.

Q.E.F.

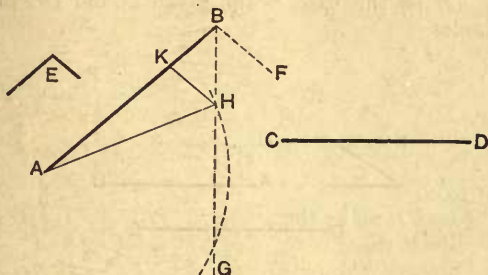
## NOTE.

The construction for any given problem may often be best found by Analysis. In the above case let us assume the triangle  $AGB$  made as required. On producing  $AG$  to  $F$  so that  $AF = DE$ , and joining  $BF$ , we see that  $GF = GB$ . Hence we see that the  $\angle GFB = \angle GBF$ . We can draw the  $\angle GFB$ , hence we can construct the  $\angle FBG$ , and so we deduce the above Construction.

XVI. PROBLEM.

To construct a triangle, having given the base, vertical angle, and sum of the sides.

Let  $AB$  be sum of sides,  $CD$  base,  $E$  vertical  $\angle$ .



CONSTRUCTION—At  $B$  make  $\angle ABF = \angle E$ .....I. 23.

Bisect the  $\angle ABF$  by  $BG$ .....I. 9.

From  $A$  with rad.  $CD$  describe an arc cutting  $BG$  in  $H$ .

From  $H$  draw  $HK \parallel$  to  $BF$ , meeting  $AB$  in  $K$ ...I. 31.

Join  $AH$ .

$\triangle AHK$  shall be the  $\triangle$  required.

PROOF—

$\angle KBH = \angle HBF$ .....Const.

$= \angle KHB$ .....I. 29.

$\therefore KB = KH$ .....I. 6.

$\therefore AK, KH = AB$ ,

and  $\angle AKH = \angle KBF = \angle E$ .....I. 29. Const.

and  $AH = CD$ .

WHEREFORE, a triangle has been constructed as required.

Q.E.F.

ANALYSIS.

Suppose  $\triangle AKH$  the triangle drawn as required.

Produce  $AK$  to  $B$  so that  $KB = KH$ ,

Then  $\angle KHB = \angle KBH = \frac{1}{2} \text{ ext}^r \angle AKH$ .....I. 5, 16.

Hence we must make an  $\angle = E$ , at  $B$  and bisect it, and so on, as above.

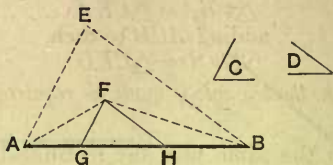
NOTE.

If one of the sides (as  $AK$ ) were given, instead of the sum, we should make the angle  $\angle AKH$  equal to the given angle  $E$ , and describe the arc to cut  $KH$ .

## XVII. PROBLEM.

To construct a triangle, having given the perimeter, and two angles.

Let  $AB$  be the perimeter,  $C$  and  $D$  the  $\angle^s$ .



CONSTRUCTION—

At  $A$  and  $B$  make the  $\angle^s$   $BAE$ ,  $ABE = \angle^s C$  and  $D$ ...I. 23.

Bisect these  $\angle^s$  by  $AF$ ,  $BF$ , meeting in  $F$ .....I. 9.

Through  $F$  draw  $FG$ ,  $FH \parallel$  to  $AE$ , and  $BE$ .....I. 31.

$FGH$  shall be the  $\triangle$  required.

PROOF—  $\therefore \angle GAF = \angle EAF = \angle AFG$ .....Const. I. 29.

$\therefore GA = GF$ .....I. 6.

Similarly  $HB = HF$ ,

$\therefore$  the perimeter of  $FGH = AB$ .

also  $\angle FGH = \angle EAG = \angle C$   
and  $\angle FHG = \angle EBH = \angle D$  } ....I. 29. Const.

WHEREFORE, the triangle is constructed as required.

Q.E.F.

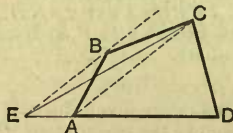
NOTE.

If the triangle be equilateral, the above gives us a method of trisecting the given straight line  $AB$ .

## XVIII. PROBLEM.

To make a triangle equal to a given quadrilateral.

Let  $ABCD$  be the given quadrilateral.





CONSTRUCTION—

Join  $AC$ .

Through  $B$  draw  $BE \parallel$  to  $AC$ , meeting  $DA$   
produced in  $E$ , and join  $EC$ .....I. 31.

$CDE$  shall be the  $\triangle$  required.

PROOF—

$\triangle CBA = \triangle CEA$ .....I. 37.

$\therefore$  adding  $ACD$  to each,

$ABCD = \triangle CED$ .

WHEREFORE, the triangle is made as required.

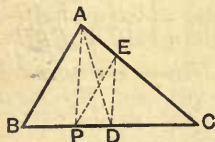
Q.E.F.

COROLLARY.—In the same way any rectilineal figure may be reduced to a triangle, by reducing the number of sides one at a time. *E.g.*, a pentagon may be reduced to a quadrilateral, and this to a triangle, by two applications of the above construction.

# XIX. PROBLEM.

To bisect a triangle by a straight line drawn through a given point in one of its sides.

Let  $ABC$  be the given  $\triangle$ , and  $P$  the given pt. in  $BC$ .



CONSTRUCTION—

Join  $AP$ .

Bisect  $BC$  in  $D$  .....I. 10.

Through  $D$  draw  $DE \parallel$  to  $AP$ , meeting  $AC$  in  $E$ ...I. 31.

Join  $PE$ .

$PE$  shall be the line required.

PROOF—

$\triangle ADP = \triangle APE$ .....I. 37.

$\therefore$  adding  $APB$  to each,

$ABPE = \triangle ABD$ ,

$= \frac{1}{2} \triangle ABC$ .....I. 38.

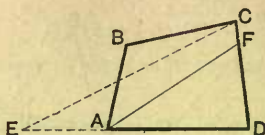
WHEREFORE, the triangle  $ABC$  is bisected by  $PE$ .

Q.E.F.

## XX. PROBLEM.

*To bisect a quadrilateral by a straight line drawn through an angular point.*

Let  $ABCD$  be the quadrilateral,  $A$  the given point ;



It is required to bisect  $ABCD$  by a straight line drawn through  $A$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Make a  $\triangle CED$  equal to  $ABCD$ ,  
having its vertex at  $C$ , and its  
base  $AD$  produced .....App. xviii.

Bisect this  $\triangle$  by a st. line  $AF$  through  $A$ ...App. xix.

$AF$  shall be the st. line required.

PROOF—

$$\begin{aligned} AFD &= \frac{1}{2} CED \dots\dots\dots \text{Const.} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} ABCD \dots\dots\dots \text{Const.} \end{aligned}$$

WHEREFORE, the quadrilateral is bisected as required.

Q.E.F.

NOTE.

If, with the above Construction,  $AF$  lies on the other side of  $AC$ , and so does not cut  $CD$ , the auxiliary triangle must be made with its vertex at  $C$ , and its base in  $BA$  produced.

## XXI. THEOREM.

*If two triangles have one angle of the one equal to one angle of the other, and the second angles in both triangles either both acute, or right, or obtuse, and the sides containing the third angles equal, each to each ; then the two triangles shall be equal in all respects.*

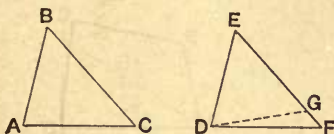
Let the  $\triangle^s ABC, DEF$  have

$$BA = ED,$$

$$AC = DF,$$

$$\simeq \text{ and } \angle ABC = \angle DEF,$$

and the  $\angle^s ACB, DFE$ , either both acute, both right,  
or both obtuse ;



Then they shall be equal in all respects.

CONSTRUCTION—

Let the  $\triangle BAC$  be placed on the  $\triangle EDF$

so that  $BA$  coincides with  $ED$ .....( $\because BA = ED$ ).

PROOF—

$$\therefore \angle ABC = \angle DEF \dots \dots \dots \text{Given.}$$

$$\therefore BC \text{ will lie on } EF,$$

Now, if  $C$  do not coincide with  $F$ ,

suppose the  $\triangle$  to take the position  $EDG$ .

$$\text{Then } DG = DF \dots \dots \dots \text{Given.}$$

$$\therefore \angle DGF = \angle DFG \dots \dots \dots \text{I. 5.}$$

1st. Suppose  $BCA$  and  $DFE$  both obtuse, or right  $\angle^s$ .

Then the above is impossible.....I. 17.

2nd. Suppose  $BCA$  and  $DFE$  both acute  $\angle^s$ .

$$\therefore DGF \text{ is an acute } \angle.$$

$$\therefore DGE \text{ is an obtuse } \angle \dots \dots \dots \text{I. 13.}$$

But it is also an acute  $\angle$ .....( $\because$  it =  $ACB$ ).

Which is impossible.

$$\therefore BC \text{ must coincide with } EF \\ \text{and } AC \text{ with } DF.$$

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects.

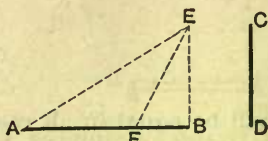
WHEREFORE, if two triangles, etc.

Q.E.D.

## XXII. PROBLEM.

*To divide a given straight line into two parts, the difference of whose squares shall be equal to the square on a given line.*

Let  $AB$  be the line to be divided,  $CD$  the other line;



It is required to divide  $AB$  (at  $F$ , say), so that the difference of the squares on  $AF$ ,  $FB$  may be equal to the square on  $CD$ .

## CONSTRUCTION—

From  $B$  draw  $BE \perp$  to  $AB$ .....App. i.

Make  $BE$  equal to  $CD$ .....I. 3.

Join  $AE$ .

At  $E$  make  $\angle AEF = \angle BAE$ , and let  $EF$  meet  $AB$  in  $F$ .....I. 23.

$AB$  shall be divided at  $F$  as required.

## PROOF—

$\therefore \angle EAF = \angle AEF$ .....Const.

$\therefore AF = FE$ .....I. 6.

$\therefore$  sq. on  $AF =$  sq. on  $FE$ .

$=$  sqs. on  $EB$ ,  $BF$ .....I. 47.

$\therefore$  difference of sqs. on  $AF$ ,  $FB =$  sq. on  $EB$

$=$  sq. on  $CD$ .....Const.

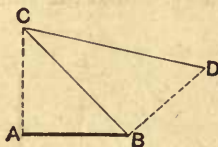
WHEREFORE,  $AB$  is divided as required.

Q.E.F.

XXIII. PROBLEM.

To make a square which shall be double, treble, etc., of a given square.

Let  $AB$  be a side of the given square ;



It is required to make squares which shall be respectively double, and treble, of the square on  $AB$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

At  $A$  draw  $AC \perp$  to  $AB$  and equal to  $AB$ .....App. i.  
Join  $BC$ .  
At  $B$  draw  $BD \perp$  to  $BC$  and equal to  $AB$ .....App. i.  
Join  $CD$ .

Then the square on  $BC$  shall be double, and the square on  $CD$  treble, the square on  $AB$ .

PROOF—

Sq. on  $BC$  = sqs. on  $BA$ ,  $AC$ .....I. 47.  
= twice sq. on  $BA$ .....Const.  
sq. on  $DC$  = sqs. on  $BC$ ,  $BD$ .....I. 47  
= thrice sq. on  $BA$ ..... Const.

In the same way we could proceed to make a square any number of times the area of a given square.

Q.E.F.

NOTE.

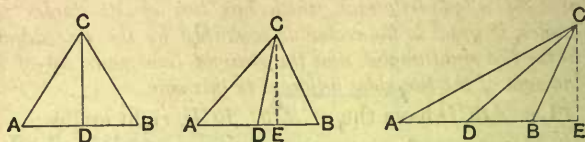
To make a square 4 times, 9 times, 16 times, etc., a given square, draw a straight line 2, 3, 4, etc., times as long. It will be the side of the square required. See II. 4., Cor. II.



## XXIV. THEOREM.

*The sum of the squares on the sides of a triangle is equal to twice the square on half the base, together with twice the square on the straight line joining the vertex to the mid point of the base.*

Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ , and  $D$  the mid pt. of  $AB$ ;



Then shall sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CB$  = twice sqs. on  $CD$ ,  $DB$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

From  $C$  draw  $CE \perp$  to  $AB$ , or  $AB$  produced .....I. 12.

PROOF—

First, let  $CE$  coincide with  $CD$ .

Then sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CB$  =  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sqs. on } CD, DA, \\ \text{with sqs. on } CD, DB \end{array} \right.$  .....I. 47.  
= twice sqs. on  $CD$ ,  $DB$  ( $\because DA = DB$ ).

Secondly, let  $CE$  not coincide with  $CD$ .

Then one of the  $\angle^s$   $ADC$ ,  $BDC$  must be obtuse.....I. 13.

Let it be  $ADC$ .

Sq. on  $AC$  =  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sqs. on } AD, DC, \\ \text{with twice rect. } AD.DE \end{array} \right.$  .....II. 12.

Sq. on  $BC$ ,  
with twice rect.  $BD.DE$  } = sqs. on  $BD$ ,  $DC$  .....II. 13.

$\therefore$  adding equal to equals,

sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CB$  } =  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{twice sq. on } CD, \text{ with sqs. on } AD, \\ \text{with twice rect. } BD.DE \end{array} \right.$  } =  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} DB, \text{ and twice rect. } AD.DE. \end{array} \right.$

But rect.  $BD.DE$  = rect.  $AD.DE$  .....( $\because AD = BD$ ).

$\therefore$  sqs. on  $AC$ ,  $CB$  = twice sqs. on  $CD$ ,  $DB$  .....Ax. 3.

WHEREFORE, the sum of the squares, etc.

Q.E.D.

ALGEBRAIC SOLUTION.

Let  $BC = a$ ,  $AC = b$ ,  $AB = 2c$ ,  $CD = d$ ,  $DE = x$ .

$$b^2 = c^2 + d^2 + 2cx,$$

$$a^2 = c^2 + d^2 - 2cx,$$

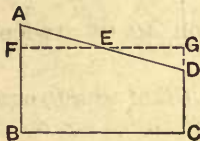
$$\therefore a^2 + b^2 = 2(c^2 + d^2).$$

Q.E.D.

XXV.

*The area of a quadrilateral which has two of its angles right angles, is equal to the rectangle contained by the side adjacent to the two right angles, and the straight line made up of half the sum of the two sides adjacent to this side.*

Let  $ABCD$  have the  $\angle^s$   $ABC$ ,  $BCD$ , right angles;



Then the area of  $ABCD$  shall = rect. contained by  $BC$   
and half the sum of  $AB$ ,  $CD$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Bisect  $AD$  in  $E$  ..... I. 10.

Through  $E$  draw  $FEG \parallel$  to  $BC$  ..... I. 31.

Meeting  $AB$ , and  $CD$  produced, in  $F$  and  $G$ .

PROOF—

In the  $\triangle^s$   $EAF$ ,  $EDG$ .

$$\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle EAF = \angle EDG \\ \angle EFA = \angle EGD \end{array} \right\} \text{ ..... I. 29.}$$

$$\text{and } AE = ED \text{ ..... Const.}$$

$$\therefore \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \triangle AFE = \triangle EGD, \\ \text{and } AF = GD. \end{array} \right\} \text{ ..... I. 26.}$$

$$\therefore \text{ area of } ABCD = \text{area of rect. } FBCG \\ = \text{rect. } BC.CG.$$

And  $\therefore AF = GD$ ,

$$\text{and } FB = CG \text{ ..... I. 34.}$$

$$\therefore CG = \text{half the sum of } AB, CD.$$

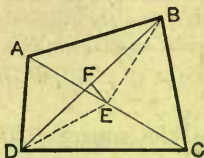
WHEREFORE, the area of a quadrilateral, etc.

Q.E.D.

## XXVI. THEOREM.

*The squares on the sides of a quadrilateral are together equal to the sum of the squares on its diagonals, together with four times the square on the straight line joining the mid points of the diagonals.*

Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral, and  $E, F$  the mid pts. of  $AC, BD$ ;



Sqs. on  $AB, BC, CD, DA$  shall = sqs. on  $AC, BD$ , with four times sq. on  $EF$ .

CONSTRUCTION—

Join  $DE, BE$ .

PROOF—

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \therefore \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Sqs. on } AB, BC = \text{twice sqs. on } BE, EC \\ \text{Sqs. on } AD, DC = \text{twice sqs. on } DE, EC \end{array} \right\} \dots \text{App. xxiv.} \\
 & \therefore \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Sqs. on } AB, BC, \\ CD, DA \end{array} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{twice sqs. on } BE, ED, \\ \text{with 4 times sq. on } EC \dots \text{Ax. 2.} \end{array} \right. \\
 & = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{4 times sqs. on } EF, FB \text{ App. xxiv.} \\ \text{with sq. on } AC \dots \text{II. 4. Cor. II.} \end{array} \right. \\
 & = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{4 times sq. on } EF, \text{ with} \\ \text{sqs. on } BD \text{ and } AC \dots \text{II. 4. Cor. II.} \end{array} \right.
 \end{aligned}$$

WHEREFORE, *the squares on the sides, etc.*

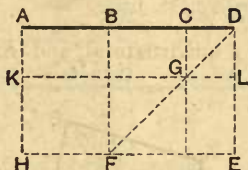
Q.E.D.

COROLLARY—

Hence, the squares on the sides of a parallelogram are together equal to the squares on the diagonals (App. x.)

XXVII. THEOREM.

If a straight line  $AD$  be divided at any two points  $B$  and  $C$ , then  
 rects.  $AB \cdot CD$  and  $BC \cdot AD = \text{rect. } AC \cdot BD$ .



CONSTRUCTION—

On  $BD$  describe the square  $BDEF$ , and complete the figure as in II. 5.

PROOF—

Rects.  $AB \cdot CD$  and  $BC \cdot AD = \text{rects. } AB \cdot KA \text{ and } KL \cdot EL$   
 $= KB \text{ and } KE$   
 $= KB, HG \text{ and } GE$   
 $= KB, HG \text{ and } BG \dots \dots \dots \text{I. 43.}$   
 $= HC.$   
 $= \text{rect. } AC \cdot BD.$

WHEREFORE, if a straight line, etc.

Q.E.D.

ALGEBRAIC PROOF.

Let  $AB = a$ ,  $BC = b$ ,  $CD = c$ ,  
 Then we have to prove that  
 $ac + b(a + b + c) = (a + b)(b + c)$ ,  
 Which is at once evident on multiplication.

Q.E.D.

NOTE.

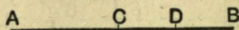
This Theorem is true for any position of the points  $B, C$ , whether in  $AD$ , or  $AD$  produced; regard being had to sign. See Notes on II. 5-8,



## XXVIII. PROBLEM.

*To divide a straight line into two parts so that the rectangle contained by them shall be a maximum.*

Let  $AB$  be the given st. line.



CONSTRUCTION—

Bisect  $AB$  at  $C$ .....I. 10.  
and in it take any other pt.  $D$ .

The rectangle  $AC.CB$  shall be a maximum.

PROOF—

Rect.  $AD.DB$  with sq. on  $CD$  = sq. on  $CB$ .....II. 5.  
= rect.  $AC.CB$ .

$\therefore$  Rect.  $AD.DB$  is less than rect.  $AC.CB$ .

WHEREFORE,  $AB$  is divided at  $C$  as required.

Q.E.F.

COROLLARY—

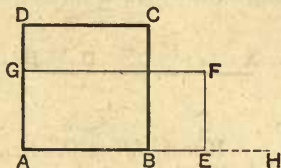
$\therefore$  sqs. on the two parts of  $AB$  } = sq. on  $AB$ ,  
with twice rect. contained by the parts }  
It is evident that  $AB$  is divided at  $C$ , so that the sum of  
the sqs. on the two parts is a minimum.



XXIX. THEOREM.

*Of all rectangles of given area, the square has the least perimeter.*

Let  $ABCD$ ,  $AEFG$  be a sq. and rect. of equal area ;



The perimeter of the sq. shall be less than that of the rect.

CONSTRUCTION—

Produce  $ABE$  to  $H$ , so that  $BH = AB$ .

PROOF—

$$\therefore AB = BH.$$

sq. on  $AB$  is greater than rect.  $AE \cdot EH$ ...App. xxviii.

But sq. on  $AB = \text{rect. } AE \cdot EF.$

$\therefore EF$  is greater than  $EH.$

$\therefore AE, EF$  are tog<sup>r</sup> greater than twice  $AB.$

$\therefore$  perim<sup>r</sup> of  $AF$  is greater than perim<sup>r</sup> of  $AC.$

WHEREFORE, of all rectangles, etc.

Q.E.D.

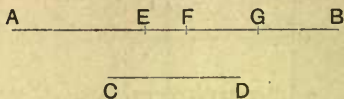
NOTE.

This Proposition is the converse of the preceding one.

## XXX. PROBLEM.

*To divide a straight line into two parts, so that the rectangle contained by them may be equal to a given square.*

Let  $AB$  be the st. line,  $CD$  a side of the given sq.



## CONSTRUCTION—

From  $AB$  cut off  $AE$  equal to  $CD$ .....I. 3.

Bisect  $AB$  in  $F$ .....I. 10.

Take  $FG$  such that  $AE, FG$  may be the sides  
of a right-angled  $\triangle$  whose hypoteneuse  
is  $AF$ .....App. xvi. Note.

Then  $AB$  shall be divided at  $G$  as required.

## PROOF—

Sq. on  $AF$  = sqs. on  $AE, FG$ .....Const.

But sq. on  $AF$  = rect.  $AG . GB$  with sq. on  $FG$ ....II. 5.

$\therefore$  rect.  $AG . GB$  with sq. on  $FG$  = sqs. on  $AE, FG$ ...Ax. 1.

$\therefore$  rect.  $AG . GB$  = sq. on  $AE$ .....Ax. 3.  
= sq. on  $CD$ .

WHEREFORE,  $AB$  is divided at  $G$  as required.

Q.E.F.

## NOTE.

From Proposition xxviii., we see that  $CD$  must be less than half the given line  $AB$ .

## DEDUCTIONS.

THESE Exercises are divided into three classes, and arranged, as far as possible, in order of difficulty. In the first class, references are given to all the Propositions, in order, which are needed for the construction and proof of each Deduction. In the second class, only the leading Proposition on which the Deduction depends, is given, as is usually done in Examination Papers; while, in the third class, the student is left to himself. These references are all so printed that they may be removed if it is thought advisable.

Deductions which are analogous to one another are not placed together, as a rule, but with some five or six exercises between them, in order that the learner may be occasionally reminded of his back work. When a reference is given to a former Deduction, it is to show that a similar method is to be again employed, not that the former result should be quoted merely.

## BOOK I.

### A.

- I. 3.                   1. On a given straight line as base, describe an isosceles triangle, having each of the sides double of the base.
- Post. 3, 1.           2. If two straight lines bisect each other at right angles, and any point in one of them be joined to the ends of the other, these joining lines are equal,
- I. 4.                   3. The sides  $AB$ ,  $AD$  of a quadrilateral are equal, and the diagonal  $AC$  bisects the angle  $BAD$ ; show that the sides  $CB$  and  $CD$  are equal, and that the diagonal  $AC$  bisects the angle  $BCD$ .
- I. 15, 4.           4. Two triangles  $BCD$ ,  $FCD$  stand on the same side of the base  $CD$ , and the sides  $BD$ ,  $FC$  mutually bisect each other. Prove that  $BF$  is equal to  $CD$ .
- I. 5. Ax. 2.           5. The opposite angles of a rhombus are equal.
- I. 5.                   6. In the figure of I. 5, prove that the angle  $VMQ$  is equal to the angle  $QRV$ .
- I. 1, 5.              7. In the figure of I. 1, if the circles cut at  $O$  and  $P$ , prove that the angle  $PKO$  is equal to the angle  $PMO$ .
- I. 5.                   8. Two circles whose centres are  $O$  and  $Q$ , cut at  $P$  and  $R$ ; show that the angle  $OPQ$  is equal to the angle  $ORQ$ .
- I. 8.                   9.  $ABC$  is an isosceles triangle;  $D$  is the middle point of the base  $BC$ ; prove that  $AD$  bisects the vertical angle  $BAC$ .
- I. 8.                   10. A point  $A$  is taken in the circumference of a circle whose centre is  $O$ , and a circle is described having  $A$  as centre, and meeting the first circle in  $B$  and  $C$ ; prove that  $AO$  bisects the angle  $BAC$ .
- I. 8.                   11. A diagonal of a rhombus bisects each of the angles through which it passes.
- I. 16, 4.           12. If in the figure of Proposition XVI.,  $DK$  be joined, then  $DK$  is equal to  $EF$ .
- I. 17, 13.           13. How many of the exterior angles of any triangle must be obtuse?
- I. 21.                14. Two triangles on the same base are such that one lies wholly inside the other; prove that the inner one has the smaller perimeter.
- I. 8, 4.              15. The diagonals of a rhombus are at right angles.

16. If the lengths of two sides of a triangle be 3 inches and 4 inches respectively, between what limits must the length of the third side lie? I. 20.
17. If two isosceles triangles are on the same base, the straight line joining their vertices is perpendicular to the base. I. 8, 4.
18. In the figure of I. 5, if  $RQ$  and  $VM$  meet in  $O$ , prove that  $OR$  is equal to  $OM$ . I. 5, 6.
19. If  $BAC$ ,  $BAD$  be two triangles on the same base  $AB$ , with the angle  $BAC$  equal to the angle  $ABD$ , and  $ABC$  equal to  $BAD$ , then the triangles  $BDC$ ,  $ADC$  are equal in all respects. I. 26.
20. Any point on the line bisecting an angle, is equidistant from the arms of the angle. I. 12, 26.
21. Straight lines bisecting two adjacent angles of a parallelogram intersect at right angles. I. 29, 32.
22. What is the size of the angle of a regular octagon. I. 32, Cor. 1.
23. If two equal triangles are between the same parallels, they are on the same base, or on equal bases. I. 3, 37.
24. Straight lines which are at right angles to the same straight line are parallel to each other. I. 28.
25.  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CD$  are three equal straight lines. The angle  $ABC$  is greater than  $BCD$ . Prove that  $AC$  is greater than  $BD$ . I. 24.
26. If the equal sides  $AB$ ,  $AC$  of an isosceles triangle be produced, as in I. 5, to  $F$  and  $G$ , so that  $AF$  is equal to  $AG$ , and if  $BG$ ,  $CF$  intersect in  $H$ , then  $AH$  will bisect the angle  $BAC$ . I. 5, 6, 8.
27. The angle  $A$  of a triangle is bisected by  $AD$  meeting  $BC$  at  $D$ , prove that  $AB$  is greater than  $BD$ . I. 16, 19.
28. If the sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CD$ ,  $DA$  of a quadrilateral are in descending order of magnitude, then the angle  $CDA$  is greater than  $CBA$ . I. 18.
29. Prove that the common chord of two equal circles which cut one another, bisects the line which joins their centres, at right angles. I. 8, 4.
30. If the angles on the other side the base of a triangle, whose sides have been produced, are equal, prove that the triangle is isosceles. I. 13, 6.
31. If an isosceles triangle has each base angle double of the vertical, find their size. I. 32.
32. Prove that the shortest line that can be drawn with its ends on the circumferences of two concentric circles, is one which, when produced, passes through the centre. I. 20.
33. If one diagonal of a quadrilateral bisect the two angles at its ends, it will bisect the other diagonal at right angles. I. 26, 4.
34. The diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other. I. 29, 34, 26.
35. If one straight line stand upon another straight line, the bisectors of the adjacent angles are perpendicular to each other. I. 13.



- I. 29, 34,  
26, 38.  
I. 4, 15, 28.
- I. 3, 31.  
Ded. 34.
- I. 26, 34.
- I. 9, 31.  
Ded. 39, 15  
I. 23, 32.
- I. 13, 32.
- I. 3, 10, 38.
- I. 34.
- I. 1, 31, 32.
- I. 20.
- I. 29, 5.
- I. 34, 8.
- I. 32, Cor. 1  
I. 31, 34, 35
- Ded. 43.
- I. 8, 6.
- I. 16.
- I. 16, 5, 19.
- I. 23.
- I. 12, 3, 4.
36. The diagonals of a parallelogram divide it into four equal parts.
37. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral bisect each other, it is a parallelogram.
38.  $AB, AC$  are two given straight lines: through a given point  $E$  between them, it is required to draw a straight line  $GEH$ , such that the intercepted portion  $GH$  shall be bisected at the point  $E$ .
39. If a straight line joining two opposite angles of a parallelogram bisect the angles, the quadrilateral is a square or a rhombus.
40. Construct a rhombus, having given the length of a diagonal, and one of the angles through which it passes.
41. On a given straight line construct a triangle equiangular to a given triangle.
42.  $D$  is a point on the side  $BC$  of a triangle  $ABC$ . If the angles  $ADC, ADB$  are respectively double of the angles  $ABC, ACB$ , the triangle is right-angled.
43. Given a triangle, describe another, such that four times the latter is equal to five times the former.
44. If two straight lines  $BA, BC$ , be respectively parallel to two others  $DE, DF$ , the angle  $CBA$  is equal to the angle  $EDF$ .
45. On a given straight line describe a rhombus having one angle equal to two-thirds of a right angle.
46. The four sides of any quadrilateral are greater than the two diagonals together.
47. Any straight line parallel to the base of an isosceles triangle makes equal angles with the sides.
48. If the diagonals of a parallelogram are equal, all its angles are equal.  
What is the size of each angle?
49. Construct a rhombus equal to a given parallelogram.
50. Make a triangle five-eighths the area of a given triangle.
51.  $ACB, ADB$  are two triangles on the same base  $AB$ , and on the same side of it;  $AC$  is equal to  $BD$ , and  $AD$  to  $BC$ , and  $AD, BC$  meet in  $O$ ; prove that the triangles  $OAB, OCD$  are isosceles.
52. In the figure of I. 5, if  $RQ$  and  $VM$  meet in  $H$ , prove that the angle  $VHQ$  is greater than  $RKM$ .
53. The straight line joining the vertex of an isosceles triangle to any point in its base, is always less than one of the equal sides.
54. Given three sides of a quadrilateral, and the angles adjacent to one of them, construct it.
55. Construct an angle double of a given angle, without using any Propositions beyond the XIIth.

56.  $AB$  and  $CD$  are two diameters of a circle; prove that if  $C$  and  $D$  be joined to  $B$ , the straight lines  $CB$ ,  $DB$  will bisect the angles made with  $AB$  by a straight line through  $B$  parallel to  $CD$ . I. 29, 5.
57.  $ABC$  is a triangle and  $P$  any point within it. Show that the sum of  $PA$ ,  $PB$ ,  $PC$  is less than the sum of the sides of the triangle. I. 21.
58. If the opposite sides of a quadrilateral be equal, it is a parallelogram. I. 8, 28.
59. If the opposite angles of a quadrilateral be equal, it is a parallelogram. I. 32, 28.
60.  $A$  is the vertex of an isosceles triangle  $ABC$ , and  $BA$  is produced to  $D$  so that  $AD$  is equal to  $AB$ , and  $DC$  is joined; show that  $BCD$  is a right angle. I. 5, 32.
61.  $ABCD$  is a quadrilateral with  $BC$  parallel to  $AD$ ; show that its area is the same as that of the parallelogram which can be formed by drawing through the middle point of  $CD$ , a straight line parallel to  $AB$ . I. 29, 26.
62. In the figure of I. 21, the difference between the angles  $BDC$ ,  $BAC$  is equal to the sum of the angles  $ABD$ ,  $ACD$ . I. 32.
63.  $ABC$  is a triangle. Through  $B$ ,  $BD$  is drawn perpendicular to  $BC$ , and through  $A$ ,  $AD$  perpendicular to  $BA$ ; these lines meet in  $D$ . Prove that the angle  $ADB$  is equal to the angle  $ABC$ . I. 32.
64. Show how to make an angle equal to one-twelfth of a right angle. I. 1, 9, 32.
65. A square and a rhombus stand on the same base. Prove that the square is greater than the rhombus. I. 17, 19, 35.
66.  $ABCD$  is a quadrilateral with  $BC$  parallel to  $AD$ ;  $E$  is the middle point of  $CD$ ; show that the triangle  $AEB$  is half the quadrilateral. Ded. 61.  
I. 41.
67.  $AB$ ,  $CD$ ,  $EF$  are three equal and parallel straight lines; prove that the triangle  $ACE$  is equal to the triangle  $BDF$  in all respects. I. 33, 8.
68. Construct a triangle, having given the base, one of the angles at the base, and the sum of the sides. I. 23, 6.
69. If one of the equal sides of an isosceles triangle be produced beyond the vertex, and the exterior angle bisected, then the bisecting line is parallel to the base of the triangle. I. 32, 28.
70. Given three sides of a quadrilateral, and the angles adjacent to the fourth, construct it. I. 23, 3, 31,  
34, 29.

## B.

- I. 5. 71. In the figure of I. 5, if  $RQ$  and  $VM$  meet in  $O$ , show that  $VO$  and  $QO$  are equal.
- I. 19. 72. The perpendicular is the shortest straight line that can be drawn from a given point to a given straight line; and of others, that which is nearer to the perpendicular is less than the more remote; and two, and only two, equal straight lines can be drawn from the given point to the given straight line, one on each side of the perpendicular.
- I. 47. 73.  $ABC$  is a triangle, and  $AD$  a perpendicular on  $BC$ ; prove that the difference of the squares on  $AB$ ,  $AC$  is equal to the difference of the squares on  $BD$ ,  $DC$ .
- I. 32. 74. If two straight lines be respectively perpendicular to two others, the angle between the former is equal to the angle between the latter.
- I. 26. 75. A straight line is drawn terminated by two parallel straight lines; through its middle point any straight line is drawn and terminated by the parallel straight lines. Show that the second straight line is bisected at the middle point of the first.
- I. 32. 76. From the ends of the base of an isosceles triangle straight lines are drawn perpendicular to the sides; show that the angles made by them with the base are each equal to half the vertical angle.
- I. 32. 77. From a point  $P$  inside a triangle  $ABC$ , perpendiculars  $PM$ ,  $PN$  are drawn to  $AB$  and  $AC$ ; prove that  $MPN$  and  $MAN$  are together equal to two right angles.
- I. 12. 78. Find a point equally distant from a given point and from a given straight line.
- I. 10. 79. From the vertex of a scalene triangle draw a straight line to the base, which shall exceed the less side, by as much as it is exceeded by the greater.
- I. 20. 80. The sum of the diagonals of a quadrilateral, is less than the sum of any four lines drawn to the four angles from any point within the figure, except their intersection.
- Ded. 11. 81. The longer sides of a parallelogram are twice as long as the shorter sides. Show that the straight lines joining the middle point of one of the longer sides with the ends of the opposite side, are perpendicular to each other.
- I. 31. 82. Find a point which is at a given distance from a given point, and from a given straight line.
- I. 26. 83.  $ABCD$  is a right-angled parallelogram, and  $AE$ ,  $BF$  are drawn to meet the diagonals  $BD$ ,  $AC$  in  $E$  and  $F$  respectively, so that the angle  $AEB$  is equal to the angle  $AFB$ . Prove that the triangles  $AEB$ ,  $AFB$  are equal in all respects.
- I. 5. 84. If  $AB$  and  $AC$  be equal sides of an isosceles triangle, and a circle with centre  $B$ , and radius  $BA$ , cut  $AC$  (or  $AC$  produced) in  $E$ ; and  $BF$  be taken in  $AB$  (or  $AB$  produced) equal to  $CE$ ; prove that the angle  $CFA$  is equal to the angle  $FAC$ .



85. Through each angular point of a triangle a straight line is drawn parallel to the opposite side. Show that the triangle thus obtained is equiangular with the given triangle. I. 29.
86. Any quadrilateral figure which is bisected by both its diagonals, is a parallelogram. I. 39.
87. If the straight line bisecting the exterior angle of a triangle be parallel to the base, the triangle is isosceles. I. 29.
88. On a given straight line as diagonal, describe a square. I. 32.
89. If two sides of a quadrilateral be parallel, and the middle points of the other two sides be joined, prove that this line is half the sum of the parallel sides. I. 31.
90. Find a point in a given straight line, such that its distances from two given points may be equal. I. 10.
91. If four straight lines meet at a point so that the opposite angles are equal, these straight lines are two and two in the same straight line. I. 15.  
Cor. 2.
92. In a given straight line find a point such that the perpendiculars drawn from it to two given straight lines shall be equal. Ded. 20.
93. If through any point equidistant from two parallel straight lines, two straight lines be drawn cutting the parallel straight lines, they will intercept equal portions of these parallel lines. I. 26.
94. Describe a circle which shall pass through two given points, and have its centre in a given line. I. 10.
95. Find a point  $B$  in a given straight line  $CD$ , such that if  $AB$  be drawn from a given point  $A$ , the angle  $ABC$  will be equal to a given angle. I. 31.
96. The bisectors of the base angles of an isosceles triangle contain an angle equal to an exterior angle of the triangle. I. 32.
97. Show that an angle of a triangle is obtuse, right, or acute, according as it is greater than, equal to, or less than the other two angles together. I. 32.
98. If  $A$  be the vertex of an isosceles triangle  $ABC$ , and  $CD$  be drawn perpendicular to  $AB$ , prove that the squares on the three sides are together equal to the square on  $BD$ , twice the square on  $AD$ , and thrice the square on  $CD$ . I. 47.
99. Through two points draw two straight lines, to form an equilateral triangle with a straight line given in position. Ded. 95.
100. Draw two squares, whose areas shall be in the ratio 5 to 7. App. 23.
101. Draw a straight line through a given point, such that the part of it intercepted between two given parallel straight lines, may be of given length. I. 34.
102. The figure formed by joining the middle points of the sides of any quadrilateral is a parallelogram, and its area half that of the quadrilateral. App. 7.

- I. 26. 103. In the figure of I. 47, if  $DB$ ,  $EC$  be produced to meet  $FG$  and  $HK$  (or either of these produced) in  $P$  and  $Q$ , show that  $BP$  and  $CQ$  are each equal to  $BC$ .
- Ded. 72. 104. The diagonals of a rectangle meet in  $O$ . Prove that of all the straight lines drawn through  $O$ , and terminated by opposite sides, the diagonals are the greatest.
- I. 8. 105. Two equal straight lines  $AB$  and  $CD$  are joined towards opposite parts by the equal straight lines  $AD$  and  $CB$ , intersecting in  $O$ . Prove that the triangles  $OAC$ ,  $OBD$  are isosceles.
- I. 32. 106. If  $ABC$  be a triangle, and through  $D$ , the middle point of  $AB$ ,  $DE$  is drawn parallel to  $BC$ , and  $BE$  be drawn to bisect the angle  $ABC$ , and meet  $DE$  in  $E$ ,  $AEB$  will be a right angle.
- I. 34. 107. Draw a parallel to the base of a triangle, equal to a given straight line.
- I. 47. 108. If perpendiculars be let fall on the sides of a triangle from any point within it, prove that the sums of the squares on alternate segments of the sides are equal.
- App. 8. 109. If two triangles stand on the same base and on the same side of it, and the middle points of the sides be joined; the joining lines will form a parallelogram.
- I. 37. 110. On the base of a given scalene triangle describe an isosceles triangle, equal to the given triangle.
- App. 13. 111. The bisectors of two exterior angles, and of the third interior angle of a triangle, are concurrent.
- I. 5. Cor. 112. The perimeter of the parallelogram formed by drawing parallels to two sides of an equilateral triangle from any point in the third side, is equal to twice the side.
- Ded. 34. 113.  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram. From a point  $P$  in  $BD$ ,  $PA$  and  $PC$  are drawn; prove that the triangles  $PAB$ ,  $PCB$ , are equal in area.
- I. 20. 114. The difference of any two sides of a triangle is less than the third side.
- I. 35. 115. If two parallelograms are on the same base, but the altitude of one is double that of the other, the area of the former is double that of the latter.
- Ded. 15. 116. Through two given points in two parallels, draw two straight lines forming a rhombus with the parallels.
- I. 34. 117. If two equal straight lines intersect each other anywhere at right angles, the quadrilateral formed by joining their ends is equal to half the square on either line.
- I. 6. 118. A straight line is drawn, bisecting one of the angles of a rhomboid; prove that it forms with the sides of the rhomboid produced, three isosceles triangles.
- I. 1. 119. Trisect a right angle.
- I. 10. 120. Through a given point draw a straight line, such that the perpendiculars on it from two given points may be on opposite sides of it, and equal to each other.



121. In the triangle  $ABC$ ,  $BC$  is bisected at  $E$ , and  $AB$  at  $G$ :  $AE$  is produced to  $F$ , so that  $EF$  is equal to  $AE$ , and  $CG$  is produced to  $H$ , so that  $GH$  is equal to  $CG$ . Show that  $HB$ ,  $FB$  are in one straight line. Compare I. 16.
122. If one angle of a triangle is equal to the sum of the other two, the triangle can be divided into two isosceles triangles. I. 23.
123. The straight lines bisecting the angles at the base of an isosceles triangle meet the sides in  $D$  and  $E$ ; show that  $DE$  is parallel to the base. I. 39.
124. In the figure of I. 5, if the equal sides of the triangle be produced upwards, I. 15 may be proved without assuming any proposition beyond I. 5.
125. The sum of the squares on the sides of a rhombus is equal to the sum of the squares on its diagonals.\* I. 47.
126. Given the perpendicular of an equilateral triangle, construct it. I. 23.
127. Find a point such that the perpendiculars from it on two given straight lines shall be respectively equal to two given lengths. How many such points are there? I. 31.
128. If straight lines be drawn from the angles of a parallelogram perpendicular to a straight line outside the parallelogram; the sum of the perpendiculars from one pair of opposite angles is equal to the sum of the other two. Ded. 89.
129. If the angle  $C$  of a triangle be equal to the sum of the other two angles  $A$  and  $B$ , the side  $AB$  is equal to twice the straight line joining  $C$  to the mid point of  $AB$ . Ded. 122.
130. If any point be taken within a parallelogram, the sum of the triangles formed by joining the point with the ends of a pair of opposite sides, is half the parallelogram. I. 41.
131.  $ABCD$  is a quadrilateral; construct a triangle whose base shall be in  $AB$  produced, vertex at a given point  $P$  in  $CD$ , and area equal to the quadrilateral. App. 18.
132. Construct a triangle of given area, and having two of its sides of given lengths. I. 41.
133. From a given point without the angle contained by two straight lines, draw a straight line, so that the part of it intercepted between the point and the nearest straight line, may be equal to the part between the two lines. App. 7.
134. If one diagonal of a quadrilateral bisects the other, it also bisects the quadrilateral. I. 38.
135. The straight line joining the mid point of the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle to the right angle, is equal to half the hypotenuse. Ded. 122.
136. Upon a given hypotenuse describe a right-angled triangle, one of whose sides shall be half the given base. Ded. 135.
137. If two straight lines be given in position, the locus of a point equidistant from them is a straight line. I. 26.

\* We may assume that the square on a straight line = four times the square on half the line.

- App. 7. 138.  $AB, CD, EF$  are three parallels.  $A, C, E$  are in a straight line, and so are  $B, D, F$ . If  $AC$  is equal to  $CE$ , prove that  $BD$  is equal to  $DF$ .
- I. 34. 139. If  $ABCD$  be a parallelogram, and from  $K$  a point in the diagonal  $AC$ ,  $EKF$  be drawn parallel to  $AD$ , meeting  $AB$  and  $DC$  in  $E$ , and  $F$ ; and  $HKG$  parallel to  $AB$ , meeting  $AD$  and  $BC$  in  $H$ , and  $G$ ; the triangles  $AGF, AEH$ , are together equal to the triangle  $ABC$ .
- I. 32. 140. If one angle of a triangle be triple another, the triangle may be divided into two isosceles triangles.
- I. 4. 141. If in the sides of a given square at equal distances from the four angles, four other points be taken, one on each side, the figure formed by the lines joining them, is also a square.
- I. 15. 142.  $ABC$  is a triangle;  $BD, CE$ , lines drawn making equal angles with  $BC$ , and meeting the opposite sides in  $D$  and  $E$ , and each other in  $F$ ; prove that if the angle  $AFE$  is equal to the angle  $AFD$ , the triangle is isosceles.
- App. 3. 143. Through two given points on opposite sides of a given straight line, draw two straight lines which shall meet in that straight line, and include an angle bisected by that line.
- Ded. 135. 144. From the angle  $A$  of a triangle  $ABC$ ,  $AD$  is drawn perpendicular to  $BC$ ; and from  $B, BE$  perpendicular to  $AC$  (the sides being produced if necessary); if  $F$  be the middle point of  $AB$ , show that  $FD, FE$  are equal.
- I. 4. 145. On the sides of any triangle  $ABC$ , equilateral triangles,  $BCD, CAE, ABF$ , are described, all external; show that the straight lines  $AD, BE, CF$  are all equal.
- I. 47. 146. If any point  $P$  be taken inside a rectangle  $ABCD$ , the squares on  $PA$  and  $PC$  are together equal to the squares on  $PB$  and  $PD$ .
- I. 32. 147. In the figure of I. 18 the angle  $LMN$  is equal to half the difference of the angles  $KLM$  and  $KML$ .
- I. 41. 148. From the point  $D$  of a parallelogram  $ABCD$ , draw  $DFG$  meeting  $BC$  at  $F$ , and  $AB$  produced at  $G$ , and join  $AF, CG$ ; show that the triangles  $ABF, CFG$  are equal.
- App. 18. 149.  $ABC$  is a triangle; construct a triangle of equal area having its vertex at  $D$  in  $BC$ , and its base in the same straight line as  $AB$ .
- App. 7. 150.  $ABC$  is a triangle,  $CD, BE$ , parallel lines meeting  $AB$  and  $AC$  produced in  $D$  and  $E$ ; prove that if the triangles  $BCE, ACB$  are equal,  $D$  is the middle point of  $AB$ .
- I. 34. 151. Find a point in the hypoteneuse of a right-angled triangle, such that the sum of the perpendiculars from it on the other two sides of the triangle may be equal to a given line. Between what limits must the latter line lie?
- I. 38. 152. If the diagonals  $AC, BD$  of a quadrilateral intersect in  $O$ , and the triangle  $ABC$  is equal to twice the triangle  $ADC$ , prove that  $OB$  is equal to twice  $OD$ .

153. Construct a triangle equal in area to a given heptagon. App. 18.
154. Three straight lines meet in a point; draw another straight line cutting them, so that the intercepted segments may be equal. App. 7
155. If two exterior angles of a triangle be bisected, and from the point of intersection of the bisecting lines a line be drawn to the opposite angle of the triangle, it will bisect that angle. I. 47.
156. Of all parallelograms which can be formed with diameters of given lengths, the rhombus is the greatest. I. 19.
157. If two sides of a trapezium be parallel, its area is equal to half that of a parallelogram whose base is the sum of these two sides, and altitude the perpendicular distance between them. App. 25.
158. In the figure of I. 47, prove that  $BG$  is parallel to  $CH$ . I. 28.
159. From a given isosceles triangle, cut off a trapezium which shall have the same base as the triangle, and its three remaining sides all equal to each other. Ded. 123.
160.  $AB$  is the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle: find a point  $D$  in  $AB$ , such that  $DB$  may equal the perpendicular from  $D$  on  $AC$ . I. 9.
161. From the angles  $B$ , and  $C$ , of a triangle perpendiculars  $BE$ ,  $CF$  are drawn to the sides  $AC$ ,  $AB$ ; show that  $EF$  is bisected by a perpendicular drawn to it, from the mid point of  $BC$ . Ded. 135.
162. The straight line which joins the mid points of the diagonals of a quadrilateral, which has two sides parallel, is parallel to those sides. I. 38.
163. In the figure of I. 1, if the circles meet in  $O$  and  $P$ , and  $KM$  produced meets one of the circles in  $A$ , then  $AOP$  is an equilateral triangle. I. 32.
164. Inscribe a parallelogram in a given triangle, so that its diagonals shall intersect at a fixed point. App. 10.
165. Determine the locus of a point, whose distance from a given point is equal to its distance from another given point. I. 11.
166. Draw a straight line, equal to one straight line, parallel to another, and terminated by two given straight lines. I. 34.
167. The sum of the squares on the sides of an equilateral triangle is equal to four times the square on the perpendicular from an angle on the opposite side. I. 47.
168. Describe a square equal to the difference of the squares on two given lines. Ded. 136.
169. Two straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  intersect in  $E$ , and the triangle  $AEC$  is equal to the triangle  $BED$ ; show that  $BC$  is parallel to  $AD$ . I. 39.
170. If the sides of a regular pentagon be produced to meet, the angles formed by them are together equal to two right angles. I. 32.
171. No straight line can be placed within a parallelogram greater than the greater diameter. I. 19.



- I. 32. 172. On a given base describe a triangle, whose angles shall be in the ratio of 3 : 4 : 5.
- Compare I. 16. 173. The two sides of a triangle are together greater than twice the straight line drawn from the vertex to the mid point of the base.
- I. 31. 174. If a quadrilateral have two of its opposite sides equal, and the other two parallel, but not equal, its opposite angles are together equal to two right angles.
- I. 18. 175. Show that a scalene triangle cannot be divided into two parts which will coincide.
- App. 16. 176. Inscribe a square of given magnitude in a given square.
- I. 32. 177. Construct an isosceles triangle having each angle at the base one-fourth of the vertical angle.
- I. 33. 178. If two triangles have two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, each to each, and the sum of the angles contained by these sides equal to two right angles, the triangles are equal in area.
- Ded. 174. 179. If one of the straight lines which join the ends of two equal straight lines towards the same parts, make the interior angles on the same side equal to each other, the joining lines shall be parallel.
- App. 8. 180. The line drawn from the vertex of a triangle bisecting the base, also bisects every line parallel to the base.
- I. 34. 181. If through a point  $O$  within a parallelogram  $ABCD$  two straight lines are drawn parallel to the sides, and the parallelograms  $OB$  and  $OD$  are equal, then  $O$  lies on the diagonal  $AC$ .
- I. 37. 182. Construct a rhombus equal to a given parallelogram.
- I. 37. 183. Given the base and area of a triangle, find the locus of the vertex.
- I. 33. 184. In Ded. 109, prove that the parallelogram is equal to half the difference of the triangles.
- I. 33. 185.  $AD$  is drawn from the vertex of an isosceles triangle  $ABC$ , perpendicular to the base, and is bisected in  $E$ . If  $BE$  produced meet  $AC$  in  $F$ , prove that the triangle  $BCF$  is double of the triangle  $BAF$ .
- I. 32. 186. If the three sides of one triangle be respectively perpendicular to the three sides of another, the triangles are equiangular.
- I. 47. 187. Given the base of a triangle, and the difference of the squares on its sides, find the locus of its vertex.
- I. 34. 188. Find the locus of a point which is always equidistant from a given straight line.
- I. 32. 189. If in a right-angled triangle, the square on one of the sides containing the right angle be equal to three times the square on the other, one angle of the triangle is double another.
- I. 34. 190. In the figure of I. 43, the triangle  $BKD$  is equal to the difference of the parallelograms  $GF$  and  $EH$ .



## C.

191. If any point be taken within an equilateral triangle, the sum of the perpendiculars from it on the sides is constant.

192. Given the mid points of the sides of a triangle, construct the triangle.

193. Given the centres of the escribed circles of a triangle, construct the triangle.

194. If two adjacent sides of a parallelogram be given in length, prove that the diagonal through their intersection increases, as the angle between them decreases.

195. In any triangle, the square on the side subtending an acute angle is less than the squares on the other two sides.

196. In an obtuse angled triangle, the square on the side subtending the obtuse angle is greater than the squares on the other sides.

197.  $AB, AC$  are two given straight lines of unlimited length. Find two points  $P$  and  $Q$  in them, such that if  $PQ$  be joined,  $AP$  and  $PQ$  may be of given length, and contain a given angle.

198.  $AHK$  is an equilateral triangle;  $ABCD$  a rhombus whose sides are each equal to those of the triangle, and of which  $BC$  and  $CD$  pass through  $H$  and  $K$  respectively: show that the angle  $DAB$  is ten-ninths of a right angle.

199. Describe a triangle equal in area to a parallelogram, and having one angle common to both.

200. Construct an equilateral triangle equal to a regular hexagon.

201. If two sides of a triangle are given, the area is a maximum when they contain a right angle.

202. In I. 47 prove that  $AE$  is perpendicular to  $BK$ .

203. In I. 47 prove that the triangle  $KCE$  is equal to the triangle  $DBF$ .

204. If one square is equal to another square, a side of the first is equal to a side of the second.

205. If two adjacent corners of a rhombus be fixed, the loci of the other corners are two circles; but if two opposite corners be fixed, the locus of the other corners is a straight line.

206. If the squares on the first and third sides of a quadrilateral be equal to the squares on the second and fourth, the diagonals are at right angles.

207. Construct a right-angled triangle, given the hypoteneuse and sum of the sides.

208. Construct a right-angled triangle, given the hypoteneuse and difference of the sides.

209. Construct a right-angled triangle, given the perimeter and an angle.

210. Within a parallelogram inscribe a rhombus, with one of its angles at a given point in a side of the parallelogram.

211.  $A$  is a given point, and  $B$  a given point in a given straight line; draw from  $A$  a straight line  $AP$  to the given straight line, so that  $AP, PB$  may be of given length.

212. A straight line  $EA$  bisects the right angle of a triangle  $ABC$ , and  $ED$  bisects  $BC$  at right angles; show that  $DE$  is equal to  $DA$ .

213. Construct a right-angled triangle, given the hypotenuse and the foot of the perpendicular on it from the right angle.

214. The difference of the base angles of any triangle, is double of the angle contained by a line drawn from the vertex perpendicular to the base, and another bisecting the angle at the vertex.

215. Find a point within a triangle from which if lines be drawn to the angles, they will trisect the triangle.

216. In I. 47 prove that if  $FG$ ,  $KH$  meet in  $M$ , and  $MA$ ,  $BC$  in  $N$ , that  $AN$ ,  $BK$ ,  $CF$  are concurrent.

217. The angle-bisectors of a parallelogram form a rectangular parallelogram, whose diagonals are parallel to the sides of the former.

218. The vertical angle  $C$  of the isosceles triangle  $ABC$  is half a right angle, and the perpendiculars  $AD$ ,  $BE$ , let fall from  $A$ ,  $B$ , on the opposite sides intersect in  $F$ . Show that  $FE$  is equal to  $EC$ .

219. Construct a triangle of given altitude, equal to a given triangle.

220. In the base  $BC$  of a triangle  $ABC$  any point  $D$  is taken; draw a straight line such that if the triangle  $ABC$  be folded along this line, the point  $A$  shall fall on the point  $D$ .

221. In I. 47, prove that the squares on  $EK$  and  $DF$  are together equal to five times the square on  $BC$ .

222. Of all triangles having the same vertical angle, and whose bases pass through the same point, the least is that whose base is bisected in that point.

223. If one of the sides of an isosceles triangle be bisected in  $D$ , and doubled by being produced through the extremity of the base to  $E$ ; then the distance of the other extremity of the base from  $E$  is double that from  $D$ .

224.  $ABC$  is a triangle with  $BA$  greater than  $CA$ ; the angle  $A$  is bisected by  $AD$ , meeting  $BC$  in  $D$ : show that  $BD$  is greater than  $CD$ .

225.  $AL$  and  $AM$  are two given straight lines, and  $P$  a given point between them; through  $P$  draw a straight line to form with  $AL$  and  $AM$  the minimum triangle.

226. Two triangles are on equal bases and between the same parallels; show that if a straight line be drawn parallel to the bases, the parts of it intercepted by the triangles are equal.

227. Construct a right-angled triangle, given one side, and the sum of the other side and the hypotenuse.

228. On the sides  $AB$ ,  $AC$  of a triangle, parallelograms  $ABDE$ ,  $ACFG$  are described;  $DE$ ,  $FG$  meet in  $H$ ; prove that the area of these parallelograms together, is equal to the area of the parallelogram on  $BC$  whose side is equal and parallel to  $AH$ .

229. Construct a triangle, given one side, and the directions of the lines from its ends which bisect the opposite sides.

230. Draw a parallel to the base of a triangle, so that the sum of the lower segments may be of given length.

231. Construct a right-angled triangle having given one side, and the difference of the other side and the hypotenuse.

232. Prove I. 19 by a direct demonstration.

233. In a triangle describe a rectangle one of whose sides shall be parallel to the base, and the sum of two adjacent sides equal to a given straight line.

234. Trisect a triangle by lines through a point in one side.

235. Through two given points draw parallel lines, to cut two given parallel lines so as to form a rhombus.

236. If  $A$  be the right angle of a triangle  $ABC$ , and  $AC$  be double  $AB$ , then the angle  $B$  is more than double the angle  $C$ .

237. Given the base, difference of base angles, and sum of sides of a triangle, construct it.

238. Given the base, difference of base angles, and difference of sides of a triangle, construct it.

239. Trisect a parallelogram by lines drawn through an angular point.

240. If two angle-bisectors of a triangle are equal, the triangle is isosceles.

## BOOK II.

### A.

- II. 2. 1.  $AB$  is a straight line, bisected at  $C$ , and a point  $D$  is taken in  $AC$ . Prove that the rectangles  $CA \cdot AD$ . and  $BC \cdot CD$  are together equal to the square on half the line.
- I. 31, 41. 2.  $ABC$  is a triangle, and  $AD$  the perpendicular from  $A$  on  $BC$ ; prove that the area of the triangle is half the rectangle  $BC \cdot AD$ .
- II. 1. 3.  $AB$  is a straight line, and  $C, D$  points in it. Prove that the rectangle  $AC \cdot DB$  and the square on  $AB$ , are together equal to the rectangles  $AD \cdot BC$ ,  $DB \cdot BA$ , and  $CA \cdot AB$ .
- I. 3. 4.  $AB$  is a straight line and  $C$  a point in it. Prove that the difference of the squares on  $AB$  and  $BC$  is equal to the rectangle contained by  $AC$  and the sum of  $AB, BC$ .
- II. 6. 5. The rectangle contained by the sum and difference of two straight lines, is equal to the difference of their squares.
- I. 3. 6.  $AB$  is a straight line, bisected at  $C$ , and produced through  $A$  to  $D$ , and through  $B$  to  $E$ ; prove that the difference of the squares on  $CD$ , and  $CE$ , is equal to the rectangle contained by  $DE$  and the difference of  $AD, BE$ .
- II. 6. 7. If a straight line  $AB$  be divided at  $C$  so that the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$  is equal to the square on  $AC$ , prove that the squares on  $AB$  and  $BC$  are equal to three times the square on  $AC$ .
- II. 10. 8. In the figure of II. 10, prove that the rectangle contained by  $EC \cdot DG$  is equal to the rectangle contained by  $CB \cdot BD$ .
- II. 12, 13. 9. If the lengths of the sides of a triangle are respectively 2, 3, and 4 feet, is it acute, right, or obtuse angled?
- II. 14. 10. Describe an isosceles right-angled triangle equal to a given rectilineal figure.
- I. 3. 11.  $AB$  is a straight line, and  $C, D$  points in it equidistant from the ends; prove that the squares on  $AB, CD$  are together double of the squares on  $DB, BC$ .
- II. 10. 12. Describe a rectangle equal to the difference of two given squares.
- II. 5. 13. Prove that the square on the sum of two straight lines, together with the square on their difference, is double of the squares on the two lines.



14. Two points,  $C$  and  $D$ , are taken in the diameter  $AB$  of a circle equidistant from the centre, and any point  $E$  in the circumference is joined to them; show that the squares on  $EC$ ,  $ED$  are together equal to the squares on  $AC$ ,  $AD$ . App. 24.
15.  $AB$  is a straight line produced through  $B$  to  $C$ , and through  $A$  to  $D$ , so that  $BC$  is equal to  $AD$ ; prove that the squares on  $CD$  and  $AB$  are together equal to twice the squares on  $BD$  and  $BC$ . I. 3.  
II. 9.
16. In II. 11 prove that the rectangle contained by  $AH$  and the sum of  $AB$ ,  $AH$ , is equal to the square on  $AB$ . II. 3, 11.
17.  $ABC$  is an isosceles triangle, with  $AB$  equal to  $AC$ ; and  $AB$  is produced to  $D$ , so that  $BD$  is equal to  $AB$ ; prove the square on  $CD$  is equal to the square on  $AB$ , together with twice the square on  $BC$ . App. 24.
18.  $AB$  is a straight line produced through  $B$  to  $C$ , and  $D$  is a point in  $AB$ . Prove that the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$ , together with the square on  $AB$ , is equal to the rectangles  $AC \cdot AD$ ,  $AB \cdot BD$ , and  $DB \cdot BC$ . II. 1.
19. If  $ABC$  be a triangle, and  $AD$ , the perpendicular on  $BC$ , be equal to  $BC$ , the squares on  $AB$ ,  $AC$ , together with twice the rectangle  $BD \cdot DC$ , are equal to three times the square on  $AD$ . I. 47.  
II. 4.
20.  $ABC$  is a triangle, and  $ABDE$  the square on  $AB$ . Prove that the sum of the squares on  $CB$ ,  $CE$  is equal to the sum of those on  $CD$ ,  $CA$ . I. 4, 6.  
App. 24.
21. In II. 11 prove that the rectangle  $FC \cdot HB$  is equal to the rectangle  $AC \cdot CK$ . II. 11.
22. If  $AB$  be divided equally at  $C$ , and unequally at  $D$ , then the squares on  $AD$ ,  $DB$  are together equal to twice the rectangle  $AD \cdot DB$  with four times the square on  $DC$ . II. 9, 5.
23.  $AB$  is a straight line produced through  $B$  to  $C$ , and through  $A$  to  $D$ ; prove that the rectangle contained by  $AC$  and  $BD$  is equal to the sum of the rectangles  $AB \cdot BC$ ,  $AB \cdot AD$ ,  $AD \cdot BC$ , together with the square on  $AB$ . II. 1.
24. The sum of the squares on the sides of a parallelogram is equal to the sum of the squares on the diagonals. App. 10, 24  
II. 4, Cor.
25. From two angular points of an acute-angled triangle  $ABC$ , perpendiculars  $AD$ ,  $BE$  are let fall on the opposite sides. Shew that the rectangle  $AC \cdot CE$  is equal to the rectangle  $BC \cdot CD$ . II. 13.
26. Construct a rectangle equal to a given square, and with the sum of its two adjacent sides of given length. App. 30.
27.  $ABC$  is a triangle, right-angled at  $C$ , and  $D$  a point in  $BC$ ; prove that the sum of the squares on  $AD$ ,  $BC$ , is equal to the sum of the squares on  $AB$ ,  $CD$ . II. 4, 12.
28.  $ABC$  is a triangle,  $D$  the mid point of  $AB$ , and  $E$  any other point in  $AB$ ; prove that the squares on  $AC$ ,  $CB$ , and twice the square on  $DE$  are equal to the squares on  $AE$ ,  $EB$ , and twice the square on  $CD$ . II. 9.  
App. 24.

- II. 4. 29.  $AB$  is a straight line divided into two parts at  $C$ , so that  $BC$  is less than  $AC$ ;  $CE$  is taken in  $CA$  equal to  $CB$ . Prove that the square on the whole line is equal to twice the rectangle  $AE.EB$  together with the square  $AE$ , and four times the square on  $BC$ .
- I. 20. 30. If the lengths of two sides of an acute-angled triangle  
II. 13. be 3 inches and 4 inches respectively, between what limits must the length of the third side lie?
- I. 12, 47. 31. Find a point in the base of a triangle, which divides it so that the difference between the squares on the segments of the base is equal to the difference between the squares on the sides.
- I. 32, 6. 32. The angle  $B$  of the triangle  $ABC$  is half a right angle ;  
II. 3.  $CE$  is drawn perpendicular to  $AB$  ; prove that the difference of the squares on  $BC$ ,  $CE$  is equal to the difference of the rectangles  $AB.CE$  and  $AE.EB$ .
- I. 47. 33. The square on any straight line drawn from the vertex  
II. 5. of an isosceles triangle to the base, is less than the square on a side of the triangle, by the rectangle contained by the segments of the base.

## B.

41. If any point  $D$  be taken in the hypoteneuse  $AC$  of an isosceles right-angled triangle  $ABC$ , the squares on  $AD$ ,  $DC$  are equal to twice the square on  $BD$ . II. 9.
42. The diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$ , of a square intersect in  $O$ ; through  $O$  a straight line is drawn meeting  $AD$ ,  $BC$  in  $E$  and  $F$ . Prove that the rectangles contained by  $AD$ .  $DE$ , and  $CB$ .  $BF$  are together equal to the square. II. 3.
43.  $ABC$  is an equilateral triangle,  $CD$  the perpendicular on  $AB$ , and  $E$  any point in  $AB$  produced; prove that the square on  $EC$  is equal to the square on  $EB$  together with the rectangle  $BC$ .  $AE$ . II. 6.
44.  $ABC$  is a triangle and  $AD$  a perpendicular from  $A$  on the base  $BC$ , or the base produced; in  $DC$ , or  $DC$  produced,  $DE$  is taken equal to  $DB$ . Prove that the difference of the squares on the sides of the triangle is equal to the rectangle  $BC$ .  $CE$ . II. 5.
45. In II. 11, prove that  $CH$  produced passes through the point of intersection of  $FG$  and  $DB$  produced. I. 43.
46. In II. 4, if  $O$  be the mid point of  $BD$ , prove that the squares on  $DG$ ,  $GB$  are together equal to the square on  $AB$  and twice the square on  $OG$ . II. 9.
47.  $AB$ ,  $AC$  are the sides of an isosceles triangle;  $AE$  is drawn perpendicular to  $AB$ , meeting  $BC$  produced in  $E$ , and  $AD$  is drawn perpendicular to  $BC$ . Prove that the difference of the squares on  $AE$  and  $AC$  is equal to twice the rectangle  $DC$ .  $CE$  together with the square on  $EC$ . II. 6.
48. If a point  $P$  be joined to the four angular points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$ , of a rectangle, the squares on  $PA$  and  $PC$  are together equal to the squares on  $PB$  and  $PD$ . App. 24.
49. Divide a straight line so that the rectangle under its segments may be equal to a given rectangle. II. 14.
50.  $D$  is the mid point of  $AC$ , one of the sides of an equilateral triangle  $ABC$ . Prove that the square on  $BD$  is three-fourths of the square on  $BC$ . II. 4, Cor.
51.  $ABC$  is a triangle right-angled at  $C$ ;  $D$  and  $E$  are points in  $AB$ , and  $AB$  produced, such that  $BD$ ,  $BE$ ,  $BC$ , are all equal. Show that the rectangle  $AD$ .  $AE$  is equal to the square on  $AC$ . II. 6.
52. In the figure of II. 8, if  $O$  be the mid point of  $EK$ , prove that the squares on  $ED$  and  $DK$  are equal to the square on  $AB$ , together with twice the square on  $OD$ . II. 10.
53. Describe a rectangle equal to a given square, and having one of its sides equal to a given line. II. 14.
54. In II. 11, prove that the rectangle contained by the sum and difference of the parts, is equal to the rectangle contained by the parts. Ded. 5.

- App. 24. 55.  $ABCDE$  is a straight line divided so that  $AB, BC, CD, DE$ , are all equal, and  $O$  is an external point. Prove that the difference between the sum of the squares on  $OA, OE$ , and the sum of the squares on  $OB, OD$  is equal to six times the square on  $AB$ .
- II. 11. 56. To a given straight line apply a rectangle whose area shall be equal to the difference of the squares on its sides.
- II. 1. 57. Prove geometrically the Algebraic identity  

$$(a + b)(c + d) = ac + bc + ad + bd.$$
- II. 12. 58. If a straight line be drawn from one of the acute angles of a right-angled triangle to the mid point of the opposite side; the square on that line, and three times the square on half the bisected side, are together equal to the square on the hypotenuse.
- II. 13. 59.  $ABC$  is a triangle right-angled at  $C$ ; and  $DE$  is drawn from a point  $D$  in  $AC$ , perpendicular to  $AB$ ; show that the rectangle  $AB \cdot AE$  is equal to the rectangle  $AC \cdot AD$ .
- II. 6. 60.  $ABC$  is a triangle, right-angled at  $A$ ; prove that the square on  $AB$  is equal to the rectangle contained by the sum and difference of  $AC, BC$ .
- II. 14. 61. Construct a rectangle equal to a given square, and having a given perimeter.
- II. 9. 62. The least square which can be described in a given square has an area equal to half the given square.
- II. 7. 63. Prove that the rectangle contained by the diagonals of the squares on the whole line, and one of the parts, is equal to twice the rectangle contained by the whole line and that part.
- I. 43. 64. In II. 9, prove that the rectangle  $GF \cdot CL$  is equal to the rectangle  $AC \cdot GL$ .
- II. 12. 65. Describe an obtuse-angled triangle such that the square on the side opposite to the obtuse angle may be greater than the sum of the squares on the sides containing the angle, by the rectangle contained by these sides.
- Book I.  
Ded. 135. 66. If a perpendicular be drawn from the right angle of a triangle to the hypotenuse, the square on it is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of the base.
- II. 9. 67. In II. 4, if the squares on  $AC, CB$  are equal to twice the rectangle  $AC \cdot CB$ , the line  $AB$  is bisected.  
 Prove this Algebraically.
- II. 12. 68. Describe a triangle such that the square on one side shall be equal to the square on the other side, together with three times the square on the third.
- II. 4. 69. In II. 11, prove that the square on  $AB$  and  $BC$  together, is equal to five times the square on  $AC$ .
- II. 12. 70. If  $C$  be the obtuse angle of a triangle  $ABC$ ,  $D$  and  $E$  the feet of the perpendiculars from  $A$  and  $B$  on the opposite sides, prove that the square on  $AB$  is equal to the sum of the rectangles  $BC \cdot BD$  and  $AC \cdot AE$ .



71.  $ABC$  is an isosceles triangle, and from one end  $B$  of the base  $BC$  a perpendicular  $BD$  is let fall on  $AC$ ; prove that the square on  $BC$  is equal to twice the rectangle  $AC \cdot CD$ . II. 7.
72. On a given straight line describe a rectangle equal to a given rectilineal figure. Ded. 53.
73. In II. 10,  $EC$  is produced to meet  $AG$  in  $K$ . Prove that the rectangle  $AC \cdot DG$  is equal to the rectangle  $AD \cdot CK$ . I. 43.
74. In the figure of II. 4, if  $AG$  be joined and produced to meet  $BE$  in  $L$ , the rectangle  $EK \cdot KL$  is equal to the square on  $BC$ . I. 31.
75. The difference between the squares on the sum and difference of two straight lines is equal to four times the rectangle contained by the lines. II. 5.
76.  $ABC$  is an acute-angled triangle;  $BE$  and  $CF$  are perpendiculars on the opposite sides. Prove that the square on  $BC$  is equal to the sum of the rectangles  $AB \cdot BF$  and  $AC \cdot CE$ . II. 13.
77.  $ABC$  is an acute-angled triangle,  $CD$  the perpendicular on  $AB$ , and  $E$  the middle point of  $AD$ ; prove that the square on  $AC$  and twice the square on  $BE$  are together equal to the squares on  $CB$ ,  $BA$ , and twice the square on  $DE$ . II. 13.
78. In II. 11, if  $FK$  meet  $AB$  in  $Z$ , prove that  $HZ$  is equal to  $HB$ . Ded. 21.
79.  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram, and the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$  intersect in  $O$ ; on  $AC$  points  $F$  and  $G$  are taken such that  $OF = OG$ ; prove that the squares on two adjacent sides of the parallelogram are equal to the squares on  $BF$ ,  $BG$ , together with twice the rectangle  $AF \cdot FC$ . II. 5.
80. Produce a straight line  $AB$  to  $C$ , so that the sum of the squares on  $AB$ ,  $AC$  may be equal to twice the rectangle  $AC \cdot CB$ . II. 12.
81. If  $AB$  be divided at  $C$  so that the rectangle  $AB \cdot BC$  is equal to the square on  $AC$ , and  $CD$  be taken equal to  $BC$ , then the rectangle  $AC \cdot AD$  is equal to the square on  $CD$ . II. 2.
82. If  $DE$  be drawn parallel to the base  $BC$  of an isosceles triangle  $ABC$ , the square on  $BE$  is equal to the square on  $CE$  together with the rectangle  $BC \cdot DE$ . II. 13.
83. Describe an isosceles triangle such that the square on the base may be equal to three times the square on either of the sides. II. 12.
84. Divide a straight line into two parts, so that the rectangle contained by the whole and one part may be equal to the rectangle contained by the other part and another given line. II. 14.
85. The rectangle contained by the diagonals of the squares on the sides of a rectangle is double the latter rectangle. II. 4.
86. In II. 11, prove that  $HD$  is parallel to  $FK$ . Ded. 78.

- Ded. 33. 87. Produce one side of a given triangle, so that the rectangle contained by this side and the produced part may be equal to the difference of the squares on the other two sides.
- II. 11. 88. Produce a straight line so that the rectangle contained by the whole straight line thus produced, and the part produced, may be equal to the square on the given line.
- I. 43. 89. If  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be two equiangular triangles, right-angled at  $B$  and  $E$  respectively, prove that the rectangle  $AB \cdot EF$  is equal to the rectangle  $BC \cdot DE$ .
- Ded. 45. 90. In II. 11, if  $FD$  meet  $AB$  in  $X$ , and  $GK$  in  $Y$ , prove that  $FX$  is equal to  $DY$ .
- I. 19. 91. Prove from II. 14, that of all rectangles with a given perimeter the square has the greatest area.

## C.

101. If  $AB$  be divided at  $C$  so that the square on  $AC$  is double the square on  $CB$ , the sum of  $AB$  and  $BC$  will be equal to the diameter of the square on  $AB$ .

102. If two rectangles are equal in area and perimeter, they are equal in every respect.

103.  $ABCDE$  is a straight line divided so that  $AB, BC, CD, DE$  are all equal, and  $O$  is an external point. Prove that the difference of the squares on  $OA$  and  $OE$  is equal to twice the difference of the squares on  $OB, OD$ .

104. If the straight line  $PQ$  is divided at  $R$  so that the rectangle  $PQ \cdot QR$  is equal to the square on  $PR$ , and  $PR$  is divided at  $S$  so that the rectangle  $PR \cdot RS$  is equal to the square on  $PS$ , prove that  $PS$  is equal to  $RQ$ .

105. In any quadrilateral the squares on the diagonals are together double of the squares on the lines joining the middle points of opposite sides.

106. Divide a straight line into two parts so that the sum of their squares may be double the square on a given line.

107. Produce a straight line so that the sum of the squares on the whole line thus produced, and on the part produced, may be double the square on the given line.

108. In II. 11, if  $CH$  be produced to meet  $BF$  at  $O$ , shew that  $CO$  is at right angles to  $BF$ .

109. Construct a rectangle, given its area, and the difference of the squares on its sides.

110. Produce a given straight line so that the rectangle contained by the whole line thus produced, and the part produced, may be equal to the square on half the line.

111. In II. 11, if  $BE$  and  $CH$  meet in  $X$ , then  $AX$  is perpendicular to  $CH$ .

112.  $AB$  is the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle  $ABC$ ; from it  $AD, BE$  are cut off equal to  $AC$  and  $BC$  respectively; shew that the square on  $DE$  is equal to twice the rectangle  $AE \cdot BD$ .

113. Divide a straight line into two parts, such that the rectangle contained by one of them, and another straight line, may be equal to the square on the remaining part.

114. In II. 11, prove that  $GB, DF, AK$  are parallel.

115. Describe a right-angled triangle, such that the rectangle contained by the hypotenuse and one side may be equal to the square on the other side.

116. Divide a straight line into two parts, such that their rectangle may be equal to the square on their difference.

117. In the figure of I. 43 prove that the rectangle contained by  $AH$  and  $EB$  is equal to the rectangle contained by  $AE$  and  $HD$ .

118.  $AC, BD$ , the diagonals of a square meet in  $O$ , and are produced to  $E$  and  $F$  respectively. Through  $O$ ,  $GOH$  is drawn parallel to the



side  $AD$  or  $BC$ ; the angle  $CDF$  is bisected by  $DK$  meeting  $GH$  produced in  $K$ , and  $HK$  is produced to  $L$ , making  $KL$  equal to  $KH$ . Prove that twice the rectangle  $GH.HL$  is equal to the difference between the square on  $HL$  and the given square.

119. Divide a straight line into two parts, so that the squares on the whole line and on one of the parts may be together double of the square on the other part.

120. In II. 9, if  $AF$  meet  $EC$  in  $L$ , prove that the rectangle  $AL.LG$  is equal to the rectangle  $FL.LC$ .



